

# **Epidemiology of pertussis in children hospitalised with respiratory tract infection**

**Rudzani Muloiwa**

MBChB, (Natal), DCH (SA), FCPaed (SA), MSc (LSHTM)

Thesis Presented for the Degree of DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY in the

Department of Paediatrics and Child Health,

Faculty of Health Sciences,

UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN

February 2020

## **Supervisors**

Prof Heather J. Zar, University of Cape Town

Prof Gregory D. Hussey, University of Cape Town

The copyright of this thesis vests in the author. No quotation from it or information derived from it is to be published without full acknowledgement of the source. The thesis is to be used for private study or non-commercial research purposes only.

Published by the University of Cape Town (UCT) in terms of the non-exclusive license granted to UCT by the author.

For he was a shrub among the poplars  
Needing more roots  
More sap to grow to sunlight,  
Thirsting for sunlight,

A low growth among the forest.

Into the soul  
The selves extended their branches,  
Into the moments of each living hour,  
Feeling for audience

Straining thin among the echoes;

And out for the solitude  
Voice and soul with selves unite,  
Riding the echoes,

Horsemen of the apocalypse;

And crowned with one self  
The name displays its foliage,  
Hanging low

A green cloud above the forest.

**Christopher Ifekandu Okigbo**  
*(Siren Limits II)*

## Declaration

I, Rudzani Muloiwa, hereby declare that this thesis is my own work, both in concept and execution, apart from the normal guidance received from my supervisors and contributions from others as outlined in the Introduction and the acknowledgement section of each chapter. The assistance I received with study management, data collection, analysis and manuscript review from the co-authors of the publications that form part of this thesis is described for each relevant chapter.

Neither the substance nor any part of the above thesis has been submitted in the past, or is being, or is to be submitted for a degree at this University or at any other university.

I grant the University of Cape Town free license to reproduce the above thesis in whole or in part, for the purpose of research.

I present this thesis for examination for the degree of PhD.

Signed: 

Signed by candidate
---------------------

 Dated: 29<sup>th</sup> December 2020



## Contents

List of Tables .....	6
List of Figures.....	7
Abstract.....	9
Acknowledgments .....	11
Style and abbreviations .....	13
Introduction .....	16
The burden of laboratory-confirmed pertussis in low- and middle-income countries since the inception of the Expanded Programme on Immunisation (EPI) in 1974: a systematic review and meta-analysis .....	36
Incidence and diagnosis of pertussis in South African children hospitalised with lower respiratory tract infection.....	74
Risk factors for childhood <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> disease in hospitalised children.....	93
Co-detection of <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> and other respiratory organisms in children hospitalised with lower respiratory tract infection .....	113
Diagnostic limitations of clinical case definitions of pertussis in infants and children with severe lower respiratory tract infection .....	134
Highlights and Conclusions.....	153
Appendix A: Informed consent form.....	156
Appendix B: Ethical approval HREC 371/2011.....	160
Appendix C: Case Report Form .....	162

## List of Tables

### Chapter 1

Table 1: Comparison of diagnostic methods for <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> .....	21
---	----

### Chapter 2

Table 1: Strategy used to search for literature in MEDLINE (Via Pubmed).....	38
Table 2: Characteristics of studies included in the systematic review.....	43
Table 3: Population and hospitalisation incidence rates of <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> .....	50

### Chapter 3

Table 1: Baseline characteristics of the study participants, <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> cases and age matched NP controls.....	79
Table 2: <i>Bordetella</i> incidence stratified by age group, HIV and vaccine doses.....	82

### Chapter 4

Table 1: Baseline characteristics of enrolled children.....	98
Table 2: Caregiver characteristics by child's <i>B. pertussis</i> PCR status.....	100
Table 3: Risk factors for confirmed <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> infection in study children.....	102

### Chapter 5

Table 1: Baseline characteristics of study participants.....	119
Table 2: Association between <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> and other organisms isolated on IS.....	122
Table 3. Risk of lower respiratory co-infection in children with confirmed <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> infection .....	123

### Chapter 6

Table 1: Clinical features for diagnosis of pertussis cases.....	136
Table 2: Baseline characteristics of study participants.....	140
Table 3: Clinical presentation of children by <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> PCR status.....	141

## List of Figures

### Chapter 2

Figure 1. Studies included in the systematic review.....	42
Figure 2. Prevalence of polymerase chain reaction confirmed <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> .....	46
Figure 3. Prevalence of culture confirmed <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> .....	47
Figure 4. Distribution of point prevalence of polymerase chain reaction and culture confirmed pertussis by period (a) and age group (b).....	49
Figure 5. Meta-analysis of the relative risk of pertussis comparing HIV unexposed uninfected (HUU) to HIV exposed uninfected (HEU) (a) and HIV infected (b).....	52
Figure 6. Mortality and case fatality rate of confirmed pertussis.....	53
Additional file 1: Country and year of included studies with confirmed pertussis shown by World Health Organization region.....	67
Additional file 2: Distribution of point prevalence of confirmed pertussis by World Health Organisation region and confirmation.....	67
Additional file 3: Prevalence of paired serology confirmed <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> .....	68
Additional file 4: Prevalence of polymerase chain reaction and culture confirmed <i>Bordetella parapertussis</i> ....	69
Additional file 5: Meta-analysis of relative detection rates of polymerase chain reaction and culture in confirming <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> infection.....	70

### Chapter 3

Figure 1. Recruited lower respiratory tract infection cases showing number and Percentage of confirmed <i>Bordetella</i> per month.....	81
--	----

### Chapter 4

Figure 1. Enrolment flow diagram of study participants showing number of <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> positive children and caregivers.....	97
---	----

### Chapter 5

Figure 1. Distribution of number of bacteria (a) and bacteria + viruses (b) identified on polymerase chain reaction (PCR) in participants with and without <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> .....	121
Figure 2. Proportion of children with hypoxaemia and chest indrawing by presence of co-detected organisms that were strongly associated with pertussis.....	125
Figure 3. Length of hospital stay by presence of co-detected organisms strongly associated with pertussis.....	126

### Chapter 6

Figure 1. Sensitivity and specificity of clinical features in the diagnosis of pertussis.....	142
Figure 2. Receiver operating characteristics (ROC) curves for duration of symptoms.....	143
Figure 3. Sensitivity and specificity of clinical features in the diagnosis of pertussis with changing duration...	144
Figure 4. Sensitivity and specificity of lymphocytosis in the diagnosis of pertussis.....	145





## Abstract

The availability of an effective vaccine against *Bordetella pertussis* substantially reduced the morbidity and mortality from pertussis, however, in the last decade there appears to have been a substantial increase in pertussis cases as reported mainly in high income countries.

Although it is believed that the greatest burden of pertussis, including deaths, is in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs), there seem to be little data available to back this up.

This thesis set out to find data that will give some insight into the burden of pertussis in a low- and middle-income setting in infants and children with severe lower respiratory tract infection (LRTI). Given the paucity of data in LMICs, the thesis started by systematically searching for existing data that will give some indication of the possible extent of the pertussis problem in these countries. Secondly, a prospective study was conducted at a children's hospital. As hospital admission is a marker of severe disease, these children were targeted as the appropriate population in which to meaningfully conduct a primary study on the burden of pertussis. In addition to quantifying the burden by describing the prevalence of confirmed pertussis in this group of children, the study set out to look for potential factors that may be associated with increased risk of pertussis. LRTI are now commonly known to be associated with identification of multiple organisms in respiratory samples, this study aimed to also look at organisms that are detected with *Bordetella pertussis*; and investigate whether this association was in any way associated with severe disease or negative outcomes. Finally, this study hoped to identify clinical features that could be used to develop a more reliable clinical case definition of pertussis.

Chapter 1 gives a background that justifies the undertaking of this study. In chapter 2 a

systematic review quantifies, using the best available data, the burden of pertussis in LMICs. Chapter 3 clarifies the methods briefly described in the rest of the manuscript. The burden of pertussis due to the two organisms known to cause the disease, *Bordetella pertussis* and *Bordetella parapertussis*, is described in some detail. In both this chapter and the earlier mentioned systematic review (chapter 2), the burden of pertussis is stratified by subgroups to identify potential risk factors. The issue of risk is formally and specifically taken up in the chapter that follows (chapter 5) where potential risk factors are analysed, and the independent impact for some of these factors is established.

The last two results chapters (chapters 6 and 7) deal respectively with the conundrum of finding other respiratory organism in the same specimen with *Bordetella pertussis* and failure to find useful clinical criteria that can help with improved diagnosis of pertussis. While there is no established pattern noted between pertussis and most organisms, a few give signals of being independently associated with *Bordetella pertussis* even if the clinical relevance is not clear at the moment.

In the final chapter of the thesis (chapter 8) I conclude the thesis by making an argument that although there are still knowledge gaps, the thesis gives a clear indication that pertussis remains a serious problem in LMICs especially for some groups that show increased risk of the disease or its severe consequences.

## Acknowledgements

Gratitude

To Heather and Greg, the night guides only believed at sunrise

To the duet that hummed incessantly and quietly, "This is not your name"

...and to Mark, Mark who believes that twice-watered cows will calf and give milk

To Mugo and Sizwe and Emmanuel, who sang with me until they were hoarse

Gratitude

To the Physician Partnership Trust

Twice named in a single pulse for the unshattered long hearts in memorium

The pathfinders whose lifting is etched in stone (Maybe not all that is broken turns to dust)

All remembering is indeed honey and gall

To Sanofi with my grandmother's hands,

Her voice straining, not knowing how to cross the ocean:

"You do not live for me"

Gratitude

For the unnumbered gifts of blood and time

Each freely given whilst holding breath

To Chris, Nomawethu and Nezisa, painstakingly counting each ounce of air

Gratitude

To Ngina and Vele for the neglect borne in silence

For the many moons that knew no other life but the distance

To the makers on their bruised knees, chanting my name from infinity to infinity

For the gift of my callused hands: the courage to hold on to my soul

And here I am finally, at the morning-sunset

Each guarded hair accounted for

The yeast is indeed hidden in the dough

Gratitude



## Style and abbreviations

The papers that have been included in this thesis comprise manuscripts submitted to both American and British journals. To maintain a sense of consistency through the thesis, all spellings in the manuscripts have been changed to comply with British English spellings, the spelling format most commonly followed in South Africa. The only exception to this has been in the included figures where the text within figures has been retained as submitted to the journals. Although all the journals to which manuscripts have been submitted use Vancouver referencing, they differ slightly in how the style is formatted. To maintain consistency throughout the thesis, a generic Vancouver style template has been adopted and applied throughout. In general, all the manuscripts that contribute to the various chapters have been reproduced in the thesis as submitted to the various journals. Each chapter therefore contains its own relevant literature review and acknowledgements.

### **Abbreviations:**

aP - the acellular vaccine

aRR - adjusted relative risks

ART - antiretroviral treatment

AUC - Area under the curve

CDC - Centre for Disease Control

95% CIs - 95% confidence intervals

DAG - directed acyclic graph

DPT - Diphtheria, Pertussis, Tetanus

EPI - National Expanded Program on Immunisation

GPI - Global Pertussis Initiative

HEU - HIV-exposed uninfected

HICs - High Income Countries

HIV+ - HIV infected

HREC - Human Research Ethics Committee

HUU - HIV-unexposed uninfected

ICH - Institute of Child Health

IQR - interquartile ranges

IS - induced sputum

LMIC - low- and middle-income countries

LRTI - lower respiratory infection

MDI - metered dose inhaler

MeSH - medical subject heading

NHLS - National Health Laboratory Services

NICD - National Institute of Communicable Disease

NP - nasopharyngeal

PCR - polymerase chain reaction confirmed

RCH - Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital

ROC - Receiver operating characteristics

RR - relative risks

RTHC - Road to Health Card

UCT - University of Cape Town

WAZ - weight for age Z scores

WHO - World Health Organization

wP - whole cell vaccine





# Chapter 1

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

## Introduction

### Epidemiology of pertussis

According to the World Health Organization (WHO), there are more than 20 to 40 million annual cases of pertussis, and 300,000 associated deaths due to the disease; 90% of which are estimated to occur in low- and middle-income countries (LMIC) [1, 2]. Most morbidity and mortality is seen amongst unimmunised or incompletely immunised infants, who have more severe disease and are more likely to have complications.[3] Increasingly, pertussis is also recognised as an important cause of disease in adolescents and adults with waning immunity. Older individuals have less severe disease and fewer complications, but substantial economic costs are associated with unrecognised infection in these individuals who also serve as an important source of infection for non-immune infants. [4]

Pertussis is a notifiable disease in South Africa (SA). Notification may be on clinical suspicion alone and does not require laboratory confirmation, but laboratory tests should be performed where available. At present there is no active surveillance for pertussis and the introduction of such surveillance is not currently a priority. Lack of surveillance is not a uniquely South African problem, most LMICs lack resources for surveillance.[4, 5] Only 60 cases of pertussis were notified to the Department of Health from January 2000 to September 2004, which is likely a substantial underestimate of the true prevalence of disease in South Africa. Anecdotal reports from concerned paediatricians and general practitioners indicate that the incidence of the disease is possibly much higher than the statistics reflect.

26 A retrospective folder review of children at the Red Cross War Memorial Children's  
27 Hospital in Cape Town, South Africa revealed that 61 out of 75 (81%) children with  
28 polymerase chain reaction confirmed (PCR) pertussis seen between 2008 and 2012 were  
29 never notified. [6] These were children who were ill enough to warrant an investigation by  
30 the attending physician. The epidemiology of pertussis in children presenting with less  
31 severe respiratory disease who do not warrant admission is still unknown and further  
32 study needs to be done in this regard.

33

### 34 **Pathogenesis**

35 Pertussis is an acute, communicable infection of the respiratory tract caused by *Bordetella*  
36 *pertussis* and occasionally by *Bordetella parapertussis*. Both organisms are strict human  
37 pathogens with most of the burden attributable to *Bordetella pertussis*. Other *Bordetella*  
38 species have been known to cause human disease, but it is *Bordetella holmesii* that in  
39 addition to *Bordetella pertussis* and *Bordetella parapertussis* has been recognised as a  
40 cause of pertussis-like illness. [7] Pertussis is spread by droplets from person to person and  
41 patients are infectious from 7 days after exposure to 3 weeks after the onset of  
42 paroxysms. [8] The organism does not invade systemically but attach to ciliated epithelial  
43 cells of the airways causing ciliastasis, local tissue damage and interference with  
44 phagocytic cell functioning. Viscous secretions and sloughed cells may accumulate in the  
45 airways and cause obstruction. Complications include apnoea, bronchopneumonia, otitis  
46 media, atelectasis, pneumothorax, hypoxic seizures, encephalopathy, feeding difficulties,  
47 and vomiting. Pressure-related complications include rectal prolapse, petechiae, hernias,  
48 epistaxis, subconjunctival and intracranial haemorrhages. [4]

49

50 Central to the pathogenesis are the many toxins that are produced by the organism. [9] The  
51 most important of these is the pertussis toxin that seems crucial in the pathogenesis of

52 severe disease and death.[10] Although *Bordetella pertussis* and *Bordetella parapertussis*  
53 cause a clinically indistinguishable disease, the latter does not produce the pertussis  
54 toxin.[7]

55

## 56 **Diagnosis**

57 Diagnosis of *Bordetella pertussis* illness in infants and young children is difficult as  
58 clinical presentation is variable and non-specific. Diagnosis is made on the basis of the  
59 clinical picture (mild cough, coryza and fever, progressing to paroxysmal cough,  
60 precipitated by crying, eating or drinking, “whooping”, vomiting, cyanosis, sweating,  
61 prostration and exhaustion).

62

63 In the absence of access to laboratory confirmation, most low and-middle income  
64 countries rely exclusively on clinical criteria to diagnose pertussis. The two commonly  
65 used diagnostic criteria are those defined by WHO and the Centers for Disease Control  
66 and Prevention (CDC). Both WHO and CDC criteria include presence of a cough for at  
67 least 14 days characterized by one of paroxysms, inspiratory whoop or post-tussive  
68 vomiting.[11] In addition to the three clinical features CDC also includes presence of  
69 apnoea in its criteria.[12] Disease presentation may be modified by age, previous  
70 immunisation or infection, antibiotic exposure and concurrent infection with other  
71 pathogens. As a result, the presentation of pertussis is frequently atypical, especially in  
72 very young infants and adults. Supporting laboratory investigations are also important  
73 (leucocytosis and lymphocytosis, isolation of *B pertussis* from nasopharyngeal  
74 secretions).[13]

75

76 A conference poster presentation of a review of PCR 115 confirmed pertussis cases from  
77 the area of Bloemfontein, South Africa, found a much shorter duration of cough (Median

78 6 days, interquartile range 3 -12days) that might not have met most clinical criteria for  
79 suspicion of pertussis disease. Lobar pneumonia was a finding in 62% of the patients in  
80 this cohort.[14]

81

82 Culture of the organism, which has been regarded as the gold standard, is possible but  
83 difficult. Although culture is highly specific, it has poor sensitivity, particularly late in  
84 disease. Culture is most likely to be positive during the catarrhal phase (5 to 14 days from  
85 the onset of illness).[4] Most cases of pertussis are only recognised once they have a  
86 paroxysmal cough. Unfortunately - especially when classical case definitions based on  
87 long duration of cough symptoms are employed - the sensitivity of culture is very poor by  
88 the time the diagnosis is suspected. Sensitivity is higher in infants than in adolescents and  
89 adults and is influenced by quality and timing of specimen collection and laboratory  
90 expertise.[4] Specimens should include a properly performed nasopharyngeal aspirate or  
91 nasopharyngeal swab, ideally inoculated directly onto a suitable culture medium (e.g.:  
92 Regan Lowe medium) at the bedside. The organism is fastidious and grows slowly.  
93 Culture plates must be incubated for at least 7 days before reported negative. Culture  
94 allows for surveillance of antibiotic resistance and molecular epidemiological typing in  
95 outbreak situations.[4]

96

97 PCR has greatly improved the ability to confirm pertussis cases and is increasingly used  
98 for diagnosis on clinical specimens. There are many advantages associated with the use of  
99 PCR: results are rapid, less dependent on delays in transport and even non-viable  
100 organisms may be detected. PCR targets include IS481, the common *Bordetella* target that  
101 includes *Bordetella pertussis* and IS1001 for *Bordetella parapertussis*. The qualitative  
102 PCR using these gene targets can be performed on a nasopharyngeal swab (Dacron not  
103 calcium alginate swabs as the latter may inhibit PCR) and/or aspirate specimens. The

104 IS481 target is also found in other *Bordetella* species such as *Bordetella holmesii* and  
105 *Bordetella brochiseptica*. [15] IS481 is therefore not specific to *Bordetella pertussis*. A  
106 published study demonstrated that up to 20% of patients initially diagnosed as pertussis  
107 using the IS481 target were in fact *Bordetella holmesii* infected [16]. If IS481, a target  
108 with high sensitivity is used to screen cases, it remains important to test the positive  
109 specimen further for the presence of pertussis toxin promoter gene sequences, as these are  
110 specific for *Bordetella pertussis*. [15] Ideally two targets should be used for diagnostic  
111 consensus. The sensitivity of PCR is highest earlier in the course of disease and declines  
112 with time from the onset of symptoms. PCR is more sensitive than culture and remains  
113 positive even once treatment is commenced. It is therefore still useful for persons  
114 presenting as late as three weeks since onset of illness. [17]

115

116 In a prior unpublished study [18] to compare a standard nested PCR and a LightCycler-  
117 based real-time assay with culture for confirming the diagnosis of pertussis, 48 children  
118 presenting to Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital with clinical features of  
119 pertussis were sequentially enrolled, nasopharyngeal aspirates were collected, and  
120 inoculated onto charcoal agar for isolation of *Bordetella pertussis*. The identity of colonies  
121 morphologically resembling *B. pertussis* was confirmed by amplification of the pertussis  
122 toxin promoter gene (*ptxA-Pr*). A nested PCR assay targeting the IS481 sequence was  
123 performed directly on the NPA samples. In addition, a real-time PCR assay for detection  
124 of the pertussis toxin promoter gene was performed on all samples. *Bordetella pertussis*  
125 was cultured from five (10%) patients. However, the nested PCR assay for IS481 was  
126 positive in 31 (65%) patients, and the toxin promoter gene was present in 17 (55%) of  
127 these 31. No patient with a negative IS481 assay was culture positive or PCR positive for  
128 the toxin promoter. These initial results suggest that PCR is a more sensitive method of  
129 detecting *Bordetella pertussis* than culture. But it also shows that *ptxA-Pr*, even though

130 more specific for *Bordetella pertussis*, may lack the requisite sensitivity for case  
131 confirmation. In the absence of double assays, PCR for the *IS481* target, even though less  
132 specific, may offer the best diagnostic confirmation support for clinically suspected cases  
133 of pertussis.

134

135 Serological diagnosis using ELISA is available, quick and easy to perform in the  
136 laboratory. As the measured response is uses antibodies against common vaccine  
137 components, in patients recently vaccinated, it is not easy to distinguish between acute  
138 infection and recent infection on a single serum sample.[19] Acute and convalescent  
139 paired sera can be taken and the change in titres used for diagnostic purposes. Serology  
140 suffers a number of drawbacks: only anti-PT (pertussis toxin) serology has been well-  
141 standardized and validated, and only anti-PT IgG ELISA testing is recommended for use  
142 in the diagnosis of pertussis. Appropriate cut-offs have not yet been determined in many  
143 instances, making interpretation, especially for unpaired testing, difficult. IgG titres need  
144 to be interpreted in the context of a diagnostic cut-off determined by local sero-  
145 epidemiological surveys. A recommendation for considering anti-PT IgG titres between  
146 50—120 international units per millilitre (IU/ml) as highly suggestive of recent pertussis  
147 has been proposed by a collaboration of European laboratories, but this is based on sero-  
148 epidemiological surveys in Western Europe.[20] No sero-epidemiological data exists for  
149 SA or other countries in Sub-Saharan Africa from which we could infer appropriate cut-  
150 off levels; this limits the usefulness of such tests in our setting at present.

151 Direct fluorescent antibody tests for direct antigen detection have poor sensitivity and  
152 specificity and should not be relied on.[21]

153

154 The current recommendation from the South African National Institute of Communicable  
155 Disease (NICD) is that suspected cases of pertussis in South Africa (SA) should have the

156 following tests performed for detection of *B. pertussis*:

- 157 • ideally: a nasopharyngeal swab or aspirate for PCR detection of *B. pertussis*.
- 158 • a nasopharyngeal swab or aspirate for culture of *B. pertussis* if PCR testing is not
- 159 feasible or available. [22]

160

161 The advantages and disadvantages of the available diagnostic methods are summarised in

162 Table 1 [22].

163

Table 1: Comparison of diagnostic methods for *Bordetella pertussis*

Method	Advantage	Disadvantage
Culture	Highly specific – if positive it confirms the diagnosis. Can be done by most diagnostic microbiology laboratories provided media and SOPs are available for processing. Relatively cheap.	Poor sensitivity – highest in first two weeks (catarrhal phase) and is reduced following treatment. Higher sensitivity for infants than for adolescents and adults. Requires selective media and prolonged incubation (at least 7 days). Ideally culture medium should be inoculated at the bedside.
Molecular techniques (PCR)	Highly sensitive. Can detect <i>B. pertussis</i> DNA even after treatment has commenced and remains positive late in the disease ( $\leq 3$ weeks). Rapid results. At present the recommended diagnostic test of choice if available.	Specificity can be a problem. False positives do occur especially if only a single target PCR is used e.g. IS481. Requires molecular expertise and equipment. Relatively expensive.
Serology	Relatively cheap and rapid test.	Only use of a fast standardized anti-PT IgG ELISA test is used (other antibodies lack sensitivity and specificity); even then, local cut-offs have not been determined. Serology can NOT be used for diagnosis of pertussis in children or adults who have received acellular pertussis vaccine in the previous year, if not longer. Not recommended alone for routine diagnosis.
Direct fluorescent antibody detection (DFA)	Rapid results.	Poor sensitivity and specificity - many false negatives and false positives. Slides are difficult to interpret and prone to reader error. No longer recommended for routine diagnosis.

164

165 Accurate diagnosis of pertussis is important for the timely institution of optimal treatment

166 (a macrolide antibiotic) and infection control measures, especially in-hospital, and for

167 appropriate treatment of household contacts.

168

169 Recent evidence has shown that the finding of a pathogen or pathogens in respiratory

170 specimens does not always indicate a causal relationship. Organisms whose presence used

171 to be regarded as being of pathogenic significance are now found in otherwise healthy

172 subjects using new more sensitive molecular diagnostic tests. This has highlighted the  
173 importance of the use of controls in studies looking at aetiological causes of respiratory  
174 disease.[23]

175

## 176 **Pertussis vaccine**

177 The availability of an effective vaccine against *Bordetella pertussis* since the 1940's has  
178 substantially reduced the morbidity and mortality from this disease, preventing an  
179 estimated 760 000 deaths annually. In many countries the original whole cell vaccine (wP)  
180 has since been replaced by various formulations of the acellular vaccine (aP). However,  
181 despite adequate vaccine coverage in many parts of the world, pertussis continues to  
182 contribute a substantial burden of disease in un-immunised infants and increasingly  
183 recognised infection and/or disease in adolescents and adults.[24] In the last decade there  
184 appears to have been a substantial increase in pertussis cases amongst immunised  
185 populations. The reasons for this are not fully elucidated but are in part due to improved  
186 case detection and laboratory diagnostic procedures.[25] Recent evidence indicate that due  
187 to the immune responses that aP vaccines induce that involve largely Th2 responses, they  
188 may be less effective than wP vaccines that induce Th1 and Th17 responses. In addition,  
189 the duration of protective immunity induced by aP vaccines is shorter than that induced by  
190 wP.[26] South African infants were routinely immunised with the whole cell vaccine at 6,  
191 10 and 14 weeks and boosted at 18 months of age as part of the National Expanded  
192 Program on Immunisation (EPI) until April 2009 when this was changed to aP.[21]

193

194 In the Western Cape Province of South Africa, vaccine coverage in 2005 was found to be  
195 80%, 77% and 48% for vaccines due by 14 weeks, 9 months and 18 months respectively.  
196 Thus, a substantial number of children did not receive their early vaccines, while a large  
197 proportion of children did not receive full courses of Diphtheria, Pertussis, Tetanus (DPT)



198 and measles vaccines. Children in the Boland region were significantly less likely to have  
199 received vaccines due by both 14 weeks and 9 months compared to those in the Cape  
200 Town Metro region.[27] Another study found vaccine coverage rates of 100%, 99% and  
201 94% at 6, 10 and 14 weeks respectively in the Paarl area of the Western Cape between  
202 2006 and 2008.[28] In another study, vaccine coverage had declined to 53% by the time of  
203 the pertussis vaccine booster dose at 18 months.[29] There are not available reliable and  
204 recent data – a survey is currently underway to collect this data.

205

206 The relative effectiveness of the vaccine in HIV-infected and HIV-exposed but uninfected  
207 infants and children compared to HIV unexposed children is uncertain. In one  
208 Cameroonian study, levels of antibodies against pertussis fimbrial antigens were  
209 substantially lower in HIV-infected than in HIV-exposed but uninfected children and there  
210 was a high risk of low antibody levels in response to the DTwP vaccine in those HIV-  
211 infected children with severe immunodeficiency (CD4 T-cell level, <25%).[30, 31] The  
212 concentrations of antibodies induced by the DTwP vaccine were lower in HIV-infected  
213 children than in uninfected children. Likewise the quality and duration of immunity to  
214 pertussis in HIV infected children once they are started on HAART is uncertain.[32] In a  
215 cohort study conducted in Khayelitsha, Western Cape Province, South Africa that  
216 included a review of antibodies against pertussis, the authors concluded that “Among  
217 South African infants, antenatal HIV exposure was associated with lower specific  
218 antibody responses in exposed uninfected infants compared with unexposed infants at  
219 birth, but with robust responses following routine vaccination.”[33]

220

## 221 **Surveillance Challenges**

222 Potential obstacles to surveillance include a lack of standardised clinical case definitions,  
223 making inter-country comparisons difficult, a lack of accurate diagnostic facilities for

224 confirmation of *Bordetella pertussis* in many developing countries (only two public health  
225 laboratories currently offer the PCR diagnostic in South Africa), inadequate recognition  
226 and reporting of cases by health care workers, particularly in adults and adolescents, and  
227 the fact that passive notification systems significantly underestimate disease burden.

228

## 229 **Rationale for the study**

230

## 231 **Hypothesis**

232 We hypothesised that a substantial number of cases of severe childhood acute respiratory  
233 infection in a South African hospital were due to *Bordetella pertussis* and *Bordetella*  
234 *parapertussis* infection.

235

## 236 **The aims:**

- 237 1. To determine the burden of pertussis in infants and children with severe LRTI
- 238 2. To determine factors that are associated with increased risk of pertussis in children  
239 with severe LRTI.
- 240 3. To determine the prevalence and type of respiratory co-infection in children  
241 infected with confirmed pertussis
- 242 4. To develop a reliable clinical case definition of pertussis.
- 243 5. To conduct a systematic review of the epidemiological patterns of confirmed  
244 pertussis in low- and middle-income countries since the inception of EPI in 1974.

245

## 246 **A brief description of the cohort of participants used to answer the aims of the thesis**

247

248 From September 2012 the study recruited children admitted for a lower respiratory tract  
249 infection to the acute admission ward of the Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital

250 in Cape Town, South Africa. The children were sequentially enrolled to a maximum of  
251 four children per day over a full one-year period. Inclusion criteria were WHO-defined  
252 age-specific tachypnoea or lower chest indrawing, apnoea. The children were less than 13  
253 years (the age limit for children coming to the hospital). Children could only be enrolled if  
254 parents were willing to sign informed consent.

255

256 We excluded participants if they had a previous admission to a health care facility in the  
257 preceding two weeks. The reason for this was to minimise health care-associated infection  
258 as study wanted primarily to assess community acquired pertussis.

259

260 A detailed history and clinical examination were done, especially noting the presence of  
261 cough, apnoea, duration of symptoms and use of antibiotics prior to admission. History of  
262 HIV exposure, infection and where relevant, antiretroviral treatment (ART) were  
263 recorded. Information on immunisation was abstracted from the Road to Health Card  
264 (RTHC), and the date and type of each vaccine recorded. The RTHC is a standardized  
265 national record for each child.

266

267 HIV testing was done as appropriate for the age of the child and the children's status  
268 classified accordingly. Specific descriptions of both testing and classification appear in  
269 each chapter where this is relevant.

270

271 Two nasopharyngeal (NP) swabs followed by an induced sputum (IS) specimen were  
272 collected from each child and sent to the laboratory for both culture and PCR testing for  
273 pertussis. In addition, a multiplex PCR for other respiratory pathogens was also  
274 performed. As with HIV, descriptions of specific tests used, and their interpretations  
275 appear in each relevant chapter.

276

277 As we also needed to assess the risk of pertussis posed by a close family member carrying  
278 *B. pertussis* in their nasopharynx, the caregiver bringing the child was also enrolled for the  
279 study. As with the child, the caregiver's previous medical history (including HIV related  
280 data) and history of recent symptoms were taken. An NP sample was taken from the  
281 caregiver to be likewise tested for pertussis.

282

283 The study enrolled 460 child-caregiver pairs into the study. The data collected from these  
284 enrolled participants were used to answer Aims 1 to 4 of the thesis as stated above. Brief  
285 composition of the recruited participants is shown in Table 2.

286

**Table 2: Baseline characteristics of enrolled participants (N=460)**

<b>Children</b>	<b>Frequency n (%)</b>
<b>Age</b>	
< 2 months old	41 (8.9)
≥ 2 months old	419 (91.1)
Median (interquartile range)	7.8 (3.6-17.8) months
Range	3.9 weeks - 12.7 years
<b>Gender</b>	
Female	202 (43.9)
Male	258 (56.1)
<b>Number of samples</b>	
Nasopharyngeal Swabs	460 (100.0)
Induced sputa	454 (98.7)
<b>Caregivers</b>	
<b>Age</b>	
Median (Interquartile range)	28 (24 - 33) years
Range	15 - 52 years
<b>Relationship to child</b>	
Mother	450 (97.8)
Father	2 (0.4)
Grandmother	5 (1.1)
Other	3 (0.7)

287

288

289

290 **Outline of the thesis**

291

292 **General statement on the structure of the thesis**

293 With the exception of Chapter 1, the introduction chapter, and Chapter 7, the conclusion  
294 chapter, all the chapters in the thesis take the form of manuscripts that are either  
295 published (in the case of Chapter 3) or undergoing peer review in various journals. Each  
296 chapter contains its own literature review, methods and discussion sections, each relevant  
297 to the specific aim of the thesis addressed by that chapter. As a result, the thesis does not  
298 contain standalone literature review, methods, or discussion chapters. The thesis does  
299 however contain a systematic review and metanalysis as detailed below. In addition, the  
300 thesis has a short conclusion chapter, highlighting the findings of the thesis.

301

302 Each aim is dealt with separately in its own chapter with only the data necessary to  
303 answer the aim specified for each chapter utilised as required in each instance. As a  
304 result of this approach, numerators and denominators as well as summarised data, are  
305 not always the same across all chapters, even when involving the same variables. This is  
306 not an error. As an example, Chapter 3 which answers Aim 1 of the thesis includes both  
307 *Bordetella pertussis* and *Bordetella parapertussis* confirmed cases in its numerator and  
308 all 460 children in its denominator while Chapter 4, which is concerned with the risk of  
309 pertussis due to *Bordetella pertussis*, and thus uses only confirmed *Bordetella pertussis*  
310 its numerator to allow for comparison with other studies. Similarly, in Chapter 6, the  
311 data of the few children above 9 years of age are excluded as they fell outside the ranges  
312 of ages being considered for the diagnostic criteria considered in the analyses.”

313

314

315

316 **Chapter 1**

317 The background, rationale and outline of the thesis is presented. In the background,  
318 the burden of pertussis is briefly described in the context of its changing epidemiology,  
319 diagnostic and notification challenges, as well as vaccine coverage. South African  
320 specific data is highlighted, indicting paucity thereof. In addition, a brief summary of  
321 the methods and the participants is given. The chapter also includes an outline of the rest  
322 of the chapters in the thesis. As each chapter contains its own literature review, the  
323 chapter does not contain extensive literature review, but only what is essential to  
324 establish grounds for this research.

325

326 **Chapter 2**

327 The chapter contains a formal systematic review on the burden of pertussis in LMICs.  
328 The prevalence of pertussis is described stratified by geographic location, diagnostic  
329 method, age categories as well as the period over which the cases were detected. The  
330 chapter highlights the high case fatality rate in young infants as well as the increased  
331 risk of pertussis burden posed by HIV infection and in utero exposure to HIV. The  
332 systematic review describes both laboratory-confirmed *Bordetella pertussis* and  
333 *Bordetella parapertussis*.

334

335 **Chapter 3**

336 In this chapter, the burden of pertussis in children admitted with acute lower respiratory  
337 tract infections as defined by WHO is described. The chapter highlights the shorter  
338 duration of symptoms at the time of diagnosis and describes an increased yield in  
339 confirmed cases secondary to the use of a second specimen collected following induced  
340 sputum. Also noted in this study is association of high risks of pertussis with HIV  
341 exposure and infection.

342 **Chapter 4**

343 In this chapter, factors that flagged as potential risk factors in the previous  
344 descriptive chapter are taken up and analysed further in more detail. A major  
345 finding reported in this chapter is the high risk of confirmed pertussis in children whose  
346 mothers have *Bordetella pertussis* isolated from a nasopharyngeal specimen. In  
347 addition, the study analyses further the association with both HIV infection as well as  
348 in-utero exposure to HIV uninfected children noted in the previous chapter by  
349 quantifying the level of risk and establishing independence of risk. Additionally, the  
350 study confirms in this African study, the well-known increased risk to pertussis  
351 associated with incomplete immunisation, early infancy and poor nutritional status.

352

353 **Chapter 5**

354 The manuscript deals with bacterial and viral co-infections that occur with  
355 pertussis. Here we describe the frequency of specific viral and bacterial  
356 organism that are found in the lower respiratory tract of children investigated for  
357 pertussis. The analysis includes correlating confirmed pertussis with the overall  
358 number of coexisting potential pathogens as well as assessing the association  
359 between pertussis and specific organisms. The importance of associated  
360 respiratory pathogens detected with *Bordetella pertussis* are analysed with  
361 respect to severity of respiratory symptoms.

362

363 **Chapter 6**

364 This manuscript assesses the sensitivity and specificity of clinical features compared to  
365 PCR as reference standard in the diagnosis of pertussis. The chapter shows the poor  
366 diagnostic accuracy of clinical case definitions and the limitation of these in both  
367 clinical use and surveillance of pertussis. The addition of lymphocytosis to clinical  
368 definitions is shown to be of limited value in improving diagnostic accuracy.

369 **Chapter 7**

370 As all relevant discussions are contained in each manuscript chapter, this is a short chapter  
371 that reflects on findings and conclusions of the thesis. The chapter discusses the significance  
372 of the findings from the systematic review and the four chapters reporting results from the  
373 primary study. The resurgence of pertussis, highlighting the high mortality in young infants  
374 and identified risk factors for pertussis are reflect on. The discussion brings into focus the  
375 need for more awareness and need for improved diagnosis of pertussis. Finally, the focus  
376 falls on the need for improved immunisation programs to control pertussis, especially  
377 targeting high risk groups in the population.

378

379 **Appendices:** The following three documents have been appended to the end of the thesis:

380 Appendix A: Informed consent form

381 Appendix B: Ethical approval HREC 371/2011

382 Appendix C: Case Report Form

383

384 **Author contributions to included manuscripts**

385

386 The contributions to the manuscripts have been endorsed by my co-supervisors,  
387 Professors Heather Zar and Gregory Hussey. All six manuscripts (published or under  
388 review) have been approved by the University of Cape Town (UCT) doctoral degrees  
389 board and UCT Vice chancellor as being appropriate for inclusion in the thesis as per  
390 UCT policy. Permissions to include these manuscripts have be sought from and granted by  
391 each of the co-authors involved in each manuscript.

392

393 **1. The burden of laboratory confirmed pertussis in low- and middle-income countries**  
394 **since the inception of the Expanded Programme on Immunisation (EPI) in 1974: a**  
395 **systematic review and metanalysis.** Muloiwa R, Kagina BM, Engel ME, Hussey



396 [Under review BMC Medicine]

397

398 Building on the published study protocol, I implemented the literature search strategy,  
399 extracted the data and analysed it. B. Kagina assisted with the quality assurance required  
400 for a systematic review study as per the study design and protocol. I analysed the data and  
401 drafted the first manuscript. M. Engel reviewed the statistical analysis plan and results. G.  
402 Hussey supervised all the aspects of the design and in the editing of the manuscript. The  
403 final manuscript was approved by all the authors. This manuscript addresses Aim 5 of the  
404 thesis.

405

406 **2. Incidence and Diagnosis of Pertussis in South African Children Hospitalised With**

407 **Lower Respiratory Tract**, Muloiwa R, Dube FS, Nicol MP, Zar HJ, Hussey GD. *The*  
408 *Pediatric infectious disease journal* 2016; **35**(6): 611-6.

409

410 I did the epidemiology study design for the project, including the analysis plan. G.  
411 Hussey sourced the funding for the study. I managed the field data collection supervised  
412 by H. Zar. F. Dube did the laboratory analysis of the specimens under supervision of M.  
413 Nicol. I did all the data analysis and wrote the first draft of the paper, integrating  
414 contributions from the co-authors. H. Zar and G. Hussey co-supervised the writing. All  
415 authors provided contributions to the published manuscript. This manuscript talks to  
416 Aim 1 of the thesis.

417

418 **3. Impact of HIV status and maternal carriage on risk of childhood *Bordetella***

419 ***pertussis* disease**. Muloiwa R, Dube FS, Nicol MP, Hussey GD, Zar HJ [Under review  
420 Plos One]

421

422 I designed the analysis plan to answer the question addressed by this manuscript using

423 the laboratory data supplied by F. Dube under supervision of M. Nicol. I did all the  
424 data analysis and wrote the first draft of the paper, integrating contributions from the  
425 co-authors. H. Zar and G. Hussey supervised and reviewed the manuscript. All authors  
426 provided contributions to the published manuscript. The manuscript answers to Aim 2 of  
427 the thesis.

428

429 **4. Co-detection of *Bordetella pertussis* and other respiratory organisms in children**  
430 **hospitalised with lower respiratory tract infection.** Muloiwa R, Dube FS, Nicol MP,  
431 Hussey GD, Zar HJ [Under review Scientific Reports]  
432

433 I designed the analysis plan to answer the question addressed by this manuscript using  
434 the laboratory data analysed by F. Dube under supervised by M. Nicol. I did all the  
435 data analysis and wrote the first draft of the paper, integrating contributions from the  
436 co-authors. H. Zar and G. Hussey supervised and reviewed the manuscript. All authors  
437 provided contributions to the published manuscript. This manuscript address Aim 3 of  
438 the thesis.

439

440 **5. Diagnostic limitations of clinical case definitions of pertussis in infants and children**  
441 **with severe lower respiratory tract infection.** Muloiwa R, Nicol MP, Hussey GD, Zar  
442 HJ [Under review Plos One]  
443

444

444 I designed the analysis plan to answer the question addressed by this manuscript. I did  
445 all the data analysis and wrote the first draft of the paper, integrating contributions from  
446 the co-authors. M Nicol reviewed the manuscript while the final supervision was done  
447 by H. Zar and G. Hussey. All authors provided contributions to the published  
448 manuscript. Aim 4 of the thesis is addressed by this manuscript.

449

450

451

## References

- 452  
453  
454 1. Crowcroft NS, Stein C, Duclos P, Birmingham M. How best to estimate the global burden  
455 of pertussis? *Lancet Infect Dis.* 2003;3(7):413-8. Epub 2003/07/03.
- 456 2. World Health Organization. Managing pertussis outbreaks during humanitarian  
457 emergencies : WHO technical note, February 2008. Geneva: World Health Organization;  
458 2008. 6 p. p.
- 459 3. Jardine A, Conaty SJ, Lowbridge C, Staff M, Vally H. Who gives pertussis to infants?  
460 Source of infection for laboratory confirmed cases less than 12 months of age during an  
461 epidemic, Sydney, 2009. *Communicable diseases intelligence quarterly report.*  
462 2010;34(2):116-21. Epub 2010/08/04.
- 463 4. Wood N, McIntyre P. Pertussis: review of epidemiology, diagnosis, management and  
464 prevention. *Paediatr Respir Rev.* 2008;9(3):201-11; quiz 11-2. Epub 2008/08/13. doi:  
465 10.1016/j.prrv.2008.05.010.
- 466 5. Cherry JD. Pertussis: challenges today and for the future. *PLoS pathogens.*  
467 2013;9(7):e1003418. Epub 2013/08/13. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003418.
- 468 6. Muloiwa R, Moodley M, Zar H, editors. Modifying the clinical case definition of pertussis  
469 increases the sensitivity of diagnosis in children suspected of *Bordetella pertussis*  
470 infection 16th International Congress on Infectious Diseases (ICID); 2014; Cape Town,  
471 South Africa.
- 472 7. Guiso N, Hegerle N. Other Bordetellas, lessons for and from pertussis vaccines. *Expert*  
473 *review of vaccines.* 2014;13(9):1125-33.
- 474 8. Mattoo S, Cherry JD. Molecular pathogenesis, epidemiology, and clinical manifestations  
475 of respiratory infections due to *Bordetella pertussis* and other *Bordetella* subspecies.  
476 *Clinical microbiology reviews.* 2005;18(2):326-82. Epub 2005/04/16. doi:  
477 10.1128/cmr.18.2.326-382.2005.
- 478 9. World Health Organisation. WHO Immunological Basis for Immunization Series Module  
479 4: Pertussis: Geneva: World Health Organization;; 2017. Available from:  
480 <https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/259388>.
- 481 10. Paddock CD, Sanden GN, Cherry JD, Gal AA, Langston C, Tatti KM, et al. Pathology  
482 and pathogenesis of fatal *Bordetella pertussis* infection in infants. *Clinical infectious*  
483 *diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.*  
484 2008;47(3):328-38. Epub 2008/06/19. doi: 10.1086/589753.
- 485 11. World Health Organisation. WHO-recommended surveillance standard of pertussis [11  
486 July 2019)]. Available from:  
487 [http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring\\_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance\\_type/  
488 passive/pertussis\\_standards/en/](http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance_type/passive/pertussis_standards/en/).
- 489 12. Centers for Disease Control. Pertussis / Whooping Cough (*Bordetella pertussis*) 2020  
490 Case Definition 2020 [29 November 2020]. Available from:  
491 <https://wwwn.cdc.gov/nndss/conditions/pertussis/case-definition/2020/>.
- 492 13. Wittenberg D. Standard Treatment Guidelines and Essential Drugs List For South Africa,  
493 Paediatric Hospital Level. Second ed: National Department of Health; 2006. p. 188.
- 494 14. Hallbauer UM, Pieters M, Elliott E, Y G. Ongoing *Bordetella* infection since April 2008  
495 in Bloemfontein, South Africa. 7th World Congress of the World Society for Pediatric  
496 Infectious Diseases; Melbourne, Australia 2011.
- 497 15. Tatti KM, Sparks KN, Boney KO, Tondella ML. Novel multitarget real-time PCR assay  
498 for rapid detection of *Bordetella* species in clinical specimens. *J Clin Microbiol.*  
499 2011;49(12):4059-66. Epub 2011/09/24. doi: 10.1128/jcm.00601-11.
- 500 16. Njamkepo E, Bonacorsi S, Debruyne M, Gibaud SA, Guillot S, Guiso N. Significant  
501 finding of *Bordetella holmesii* DNA in nasopharyngeal samples from French patients with  
502 suspected pertussis. *J Clin Microbiol.* 2011;49(12):4347-8. Epub 2011/10/21. doi:  
503 10.1128/jcm.01272-11.
- 504 17. Crowcroft NS, Pebody RG. Recent developments in pertussis. *Lancet.*  
505 2006;367(9526):1926-36. Epub 2006/06/13. doi: S0140-6736(06)68848-X [pii]  
506 10.1016/S0140-6736(06)68848-X [doi].
- 507 18. Shankland I, Corcoran C, Zar H, Diedericks R, Whitelaw A. Detection of *Bordetella*

- 508 *Pertussis* in Nasopharyngeal Aspirates from Young Children by Polymerase Chain  
509 Reaction.
- 510 19. Fry NK, Tzivra O, Li YT, McNiff A, Doshi N, Maple PA, et al. Laboratory diagnosis of  
511 pertussis infections: the role of PCR and serology. *J Med Microbiol.* 2004;53(Pt 6):519-  
512 25. Epub 2004/05/20.
- 513 20. Riffelmann M, Thiel K, Schmetz J, Wirsing von Koenig CH. Performance of commercial  
514 enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays for detection of antibodies to *Bordetella pertussis*. *J*  
515 *Clin Microbiol.* 2010;48(12):4459-63. Epub 2010/10/15. doi: 10.1128/JCM.01371-10.
- 516 21. De Jong G. Pertussis - New Challenges from an "Old" Disease.: National Institute for  
517 Communicable Diseases (NICD) of the National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)  
518 Available from: <http://www.nicd.ac.za>.
- 519 22. Communicable Disease Communiqué, Vol 10 No 2 National Institute for Communicable  
520 Diseases (NICD) of the National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) February 2011.  
521 Available from: <http://www.nicd.ac.za>.
- 522 23. Hammitt LL, Kazungu S, Morpeth SC, Gibson DG, Mvera B, Brent AJ, et al. A  
523 preliminary study of pneumonia etiology among hospitalized children in Kenya. *Clinical*  
524 *infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.*  
525 2012;54 Suppl 2:S190-9. Epub 2012/03/21. doi: 10.1093/cid/cir1071.
- 526 24. Tan T, Dalby T, Forsyth K, Halperin SA, Heininger U, Hozbor D, et al. Pertussis Across  
527 the Globe: Recent Epidemiologic Trends From 2000-2013. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* 2015. doi:  
528 10.1097/INF.0000000000000795.
- 529 25. Clark TA. Changing pertussis epidemiology: everything old is new again. *J Infect Dis.*  
530 2014;209(7):978-81. Epub 2014/03/15. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiu001.
- 531 26. Warfel JM, Zimmerman LI, Merkel TJ. Acellular pertussis vaccines protect against  
532 disease but fail to prevent infection and transmission in a nonhuman primate model. *Proc*  
533 *Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 2014;111(2):787-92. Epub 2013/11/28. doi:  
534 10.1073/pnas.1314688110.
- 535 27. Sanders D, Reynolds L, Eley B, Kroon M, Zar H, Davies M-A, et al. Volume 7.  
536 Decreasing the Burden of Childhood Disease. Western Cape Burden of Disease Reduction  
537 Project. 2007.
- 538 28. Fadnes LT, Jackson D, Engebretsen IM, Zembe W, Sanders D, Sommerfelt H, et al.  
539 Vaccination coverage and timeliness in three South African areas: a prospective study.  
540 *BMC public health.* 2011;11(1):404. Epub 2011/05/31. doi: 1471-2458-11-404
- 541 29. Corrigan J, Coetzee D, Cameron N. Is the Western Cape at risk of an outbreak of  
542 preventable childhood diseases? Lessons from an evaluation of routine immunisation  
543 coverage. *South African medical journal = Suid-Afrikaanse tydskrif vir geneeskunde.*  
544 2008;98(1):41-5. Epub 2008/02/14.
- 545 30. Tejiokem MC, Gouandjika I, Beniguel L, Zanga MC, Tene G, Gody JC, et al. HIV-  
546 infected children living in Central Africa have low persistence of antibodies to vaccines  
547 used in the Expanded Program on Immunization. *PLoS One.* 2007;2(12):e1260. Epub  
548 2007/12/07. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0001260 [doi].
- 549 31. Tejiokem MC, Njamkepo E, Gouandjika I, Rousset D, Beniguel L, Bilong C, et al.  
550 Whole-cell pertussis vaccine induces low antibody levels in human immunodeficiency  
551 virus-infected children living in sub-Saharan Africa. *Clin Vaccine Immunol.*  
552 2009;16(4):479-83. Epub 2009/02/06. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00312-08 [doi].
- 553 32. Sutcliffe CG, Moss WJ. Do children infected with HIV receiving HAART need to be  
554 revaccinated? *Lancet Infect Dis.* 10(9):630-42. Epub 2010/08/28. doi: 10.1016/S1473-  
555 3099(10)70116-X [doi].
- 556 33. Jones CE, Naidoo S, De Beer C, Esser M, Kampmann B, Hesselting AC. Maternal HIV  
557 infection and antibody responses against vaccine-preventable diseases in uninfected  
558 infants. *JAMA.* 2011;305(6):576-84. Epub 2011/02/10. doi: 10.1001/jama.2011.100.  
559

## Chapter 2

1 **The burden of laboratory-confirmed pertussis in low- and middle-income countries**  
2 **since the inception of the Expanded Programme on Immunisation (EPI) in 1974: a**  
3 **systematic review and meta-analysis**

4  
5 Rudzani Muloiwa<sup>1</sup>, Benjamin M. Kagina<sup>2</sup>, Mark E. Engel<sup>3</sup>, Gregory D. Hussey<sup>2,4</sup>

6  
7 **Affiliations**

8 <sup>1</sup>Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Groote Schuur Hospital, University of Cape  
9 Town

10 <sup>2</sup>Vaccines for Africa Initiative, School of Public Health and Family Medicine, University  
11 of Cape Town

12 <sup>3</sup>Department of Medicine, Groote Schuur Hospital, University of Cape Town

13 <sup>4</sup> Division of Medical Microbiology & Institute of Infectious Disease and Molecular  
14 Medicine, University of Cape Town

15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31 **Corresponding author**

32 Rudzani Muloiwa

33 Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Groote Schuur Hospital, Main Road,  
34 Observatory, 7925, Cape Town, Republic of South Africa

35 Tel: +27 21 650 1779, E-mail: Rudzani.Muloiwa@uct.ac.za

38     **Abstract**

39

40     **Background:** An effective vaccine against *Bordetella pertussis* was introduced into the  
41 Expanded Programme on Immunisation (EPI) by WHO in 1974; leading to substantial  
42 global reduction in pertussis morbidity and mortality. In Low and Middle-Income  
43 Countries (LMICs), however, the epidemiology of pertussis remains largely unknown.  
44 This impacts negatively on pertussis control strategies in these countries. This study aimed  
45 to systematically and comprehensively review published literature on the burden of  
46 laboratory-confirmed pertussis in LMICs over the 45 years of EPI.

47

48     **Methods:** Electronic databases were searched for relevant literature (1974 to December  
49 2018) using common and MeSH terms for pertussis. Studies using PCR, culture or paired  
50 serology to confirm *Bordetella pertussis* and *parapertussis* in symptomatic individuals  
51 were included if they had clearly defined numerators and denominators to determine  
52 prevalence and mortality rates.

53

54     **Results:** Eighty-two studies (49 167 participants) made the inclusion criteria. All six  
55 WHO regions were represented with most of the studies published after 2010 and  
56 involving mainly upper-middle income countries ((n=63; 77%). PCR was the main  
57 diagnostic test after the year 2000.

58

59 The overall median point prevalence of PCR-confirmed *Bordetella pertussis* was 11%  
60 (Interquartile range, 5-27%), while culture-confirmed was 3% (IQR 1-9%) and paired  
61 serology a median of 17% (IQR 3-23%) over the period. On average, culture  
62 underestimated prevalence by 85% (RR=0.15, 95% CI, 0.10-0.22) compared to PCR in  
63 the same studies.

64 Higher proportions of pertussis were associated with HIV exposure [RR, 1.4 (95% CI,  
65 1.0-2.0)] and infection [RR, 2.4 (95% CI, 1.1-5.1)]. HIV infection and exposure were  
66 also related to higher pertussis incidences, higher rates of hospitalisation and pertussis  
67 related deaths.

68

69 In studies reporting deaths, the case fatality rate was 6.5% (95% CI, 4.0-9.5%). Most  
70 deaths occurred in infants less than six months of age.

71

72 **Conclusions:** Despite widespread use of pertussis vaccines, prevalence of pertussis  
73 remains high in LMIC over the last three decades. There is a need to increase access to  
74 PCR based diagnostic confirmation in order to improve surveillance. Disease control  
75 measures in LMICs must take into account the persistent significant infant mortality and  
76 increased disease burden associated with HIV infection and exposure.

77

78

## 79 **KEYWORDS**

80 pertussis, burden, prevalence, incidence, mortality, case fatality, HIV, low and middle-  
81 income countries (LMIC)

82

83

84

85

86

87

88

89

## 90 **Background**

91

92 Pertussis is a highly infectious respiratory illness caused by *Bordetella pertussis* or  
93 *Bordetella parapertussis*. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that 90% of  
94 the 20 to 40 million annual cases of pertussis, and 300,000 associated deaths due to the  
95 disease, occur in low and middle-income countries (LMIC) [1, 2]. While there are good  
96 surveillance data to support the re-emergence of pertussis in High Income Countries  
97 (HICs), the disease trends are unknown in LMICs due to paucity of epidemiological data  
98 in these settings [3, 4]. A non-systematic review of available data for the African  
99 continent was published recently by the Global Pertussis Initiative (GPI).[5]

100

101 The high HIV prevalence estimates in LMICs coupled with suboptimal vaccines uptake  
102 are modifiable risk factors that can fuel pertussis epidemics in these settings [6, 7]. The  
103 pertussis resurgence reported lately in HICs, has resulted in the review of disease control  
104 strategies in these countries [3, 8]. A review of existing pertussis control programs in  
105 LMICs is yet to be undertaken.

106

107 The availability of an effective vaccine against *Bordetella pertussis* since the 1940s has  
108 led to a substantial global reduction in the morbidity and mortality caused by pertussis [9].  
109 In 1974, WHO included the whole cell vaccine (wP) in the Expanded Programme on  
110 Immunisation (EPI) adopted in several countries. Although wP is still widely used in  
111 many LMICs, many HICs have replaced wP with various formulations of the acellular  
112 vaccine (aP) [10]. Epidemiological data from HICs show that despite high vaccine  
113 coverage with aP, the pertussis burden has increased in non-immunised, partially-  
114 immunised infants, as well as in previously immunised adolescents and adults [3, 8, 11-  
115 13]. The reported pertussis resurgence has been linked to several factors such as reduced



116 efficacy of aP vaccines, genetic evolution of the pertussis bacteria as well as improved  
117 diagnosis and reporting of the disease [4].

118

119 A sound understanding of trends in the burden of pertussis is required to assess the impact  
120 of current pertussis control strategies as well as to decide on future policy. We conducted  
121 a comprehensive systematic review to address the knowledge gap in the longitudinal  
122 epidemiology of pertussis in LMICs for the 45 years starting in 1974 to 2018, inclusive.  
123 Primarily, our systematic review aimed to review available published literature on the  
124 prevalence and/or incidence of laboratory confirmed pertussis in LMICs since the  
125 inception of the EPI and to determine the trend in the burden of pertussis in LMICs from  
126 1974. For secondary objectives, we sought to determine the mortality and case fatality  
127 rates ascribed to pertussis in LMICs as well as to investigate the impact of vaccine choice  
128 (wP or aP), and HIV infection and *in utero* exposure on the burden of pertussis in LMICs  
129 over the review period.

130

## 131 **METHODS**

132

### 133 **Search strategy and criteria for selecting studies**

134 The protocol for the systematic review was registered with PROSPERO International  
135 Prospective Register of systematic reviews (<http://www.crd.york.ac.uk/PROSPERO>), with  
136 registration CRD42015015159. The methods employed in conducting this review have  
137 been previously published [14]. The following electronic databases were searched for  
138 qualifying literature: MEDLINE, Scopus, Africa-Wide, PDQ-Evidence, WHOLIS,  
139 CINAHL, CENTRAL and Web of Science. Search terms used included “pertussis,”  
140 “*Bordetella pertussis*”, “*Bordetella parapertussis*,” and “whooping cough” combined with

141 “burden”, “epidemiology”, “incidence”, “prevalence”, and “case”. These were used  
 142 together with the specific names of all LMICs as classified by the World Bank [15, 16].  
 143 The search strategy as used in MEDLINE via Pubmed is shown in Table 1. The search  
 144 was carried out in April 2015, March 2018 and updated in January and April 2019. The  
 145 World Bank groupings reflect the status at last search.  
 146

**Table 1: Strategy used to search for literature in MEDLINE (Via Pubmed)**

Query No.	Search term
#1	Pertussis (MeSH) OR whooping cough (MeSH)
#2	Bordetella pertussis OR B. pertussis OR Bordetella parapertussis OR B. parapertussis
#3	#1 OR #2
#4	Burden OR epidemiology OR incidence OR prevalence OR case*
#5	#3 AND #4
#6	(Afghanistan OR Albania OR Algeria OR American Samoa OR Angola OR Armenia OR Armenian Azerbaijan OR Bangladesh OR Belize OR Benin OR Byelarus OR Byelorussian OR Belarus OR Belorussian OR Belorussia OR Bhutan OR Bolivia OR Bosnia OR Herzegovina OR Hercegovina OR Botswana OR Republic of Botswana OR Brazil OR Brasil OR Bulgaria OR Burkina Faso OR Burkina Fasso OR Upper Volta OR Burundi OR Urundi OR Cambodia OR Khmer Republic OR Kampuchea OR Cameroon OR Camerons OR Cameron OR Camerons OR Cape Verde OR Cabo Verde OR Central African Republic OR Chad OR China OR Colombia OR Comoros OR Comoro Islands OR Comores OR Mayotte OR Congo OR Republic of Congo OR Zaire OR Costa Rica OR Cote d'Ivoire OR Ivory Coast OR Cuba OR Djibouti OR French Somaliland OR Democratic Republic of Congo OR DRC OR Zaire OR Dominica OR Dominican Republic OR East Timor OR East Timur OR Timor Leste OR Ecuador OR Egypt OR United Arab Republic OR El Salvador OR Eritrea OR Equatorial Guinea OR Ethiopia OR Fiji OR Gabon OR Gabonese Republic OR Gambia OR Georgia Republic OR Georgian Republic OR Georgia)
#7	(Ghana OR Gold Coast OR Greece OR Grenada OR Guatemala OR Guinea OR Guinea-Bissau OR Guiana OR Guyana OR Haiti OR Honduras OR India OR Maldives OR Indonesia OR Iran OR Iraq OR Jamaica OR Jordan OR Kazakhstan OR Kazakh OR Kenya OR Kiribati OR Korea OR Kosovo OR Kyrgyzstan OR Kirghizia OR Kyrgyz Republic OR Kirghiz OR Kirgizstan OR Lao PDR OR Laos OR Lebanon OR Lesotho OR Basutoland OR Liberia OR Libya OR Macedonia OR Madagascar OR Malagasy Republic OR Malaysia OR Malaya OR Malay OR Sabah OR Sarawak OR Malawi OR Nyasaland OR Mali OR Marshall Islands OR Mauritania OR Mauritius OR Agalega Islands OR Mexico OR Micronesia OR Moldova OR Moldavia OR Moldovan OR Mongolia OR Montenegro OR Morocco OR Ifni OR Mozambique OR Myanmar OR Myanma OR Burma OR Namibia OR South-West Africa OR Nauru OR Nepal OR Nicaragua OR Niger OR Nigeria OR Pakistan OR Palestine OR Papua New Guinea OR Paraguay OR Peru OR Philippines OR Philipines OR Phillipines OR Phillipines OR Rumania OR Rumania OR Roumania)
#8	(Rwanda OR Ruanda OR Saint Kitts OR St Kitts OR Nevis OR Saint Lucia OR St Lucia OR Saint Vincent OR St Vincent OR Grenadines OR Samoa OR Samoan Islands OR Navigator Island OR Navigator Islands OR Sao Tome OR Sao Tome and Principe OR São Tomé OR Senegal OR Serbia OR Montenegro OR Sierra Leone OR Sri Lanka OR Ceylon OR Solomon Islands OR Somalia OR Somaliland OR Sudan OR South Sudan OR South Africa OR Republic of South Africa OR Suriname OR Surinam OR Swaziland OR Syria OR Syrian Arab Republic OR Tajikistan OR Tadjikistan OR Tadjikistan OR Tadjik OR Tanzania OR United Republic of Tanzania OR Thailand OR Tuvalu OR Togo OR Togolese Republic OR Tonga OR Tunisia OR Turkey OR Turkmenistan OR Turkmen OR Uganda OR Ukraine OR USSR OR Soviet Union OR Union of Soviet Socialist Republics OR Russian Federation OR Russia OR Uzbekistan OR Uzbek OR Vanuatu OR New Hebrides OR Venezuela OR Vietnam OR Viet Nam OR West Bank OR West Bank and Gaza OR Gaza OR Yemen OR Yugoslavia OR Zambia OR Zimbabwe OR Rhodesia)
#9	#6 OR #7 OR #8
#10	#5 AND #9

147  
 148 The search was limited to studies published from 1974, the year that the Expanded  
 149 Programme on Immunisation (EPI) was introduced, until December 2018. Titles and  
 150 abstracts of the search outputs and references were screened, and the full texts of  
 151 potentially relevant articles were independently assessed by two reviewers (RM and BK)

152 using a standardized score sheet. Disagreements on final inclusions were resolved by  
153 consensus following discussions involving a third reviewer (GH). Authors and publishers  
154 were contacted for full texts not available online or via our collaborative networks.

155

156 Studies were included if the study populations were from LMICs. While the diagnosis of  
157 pertussis is largely made on the basis of clinical parameters, it is well-known that clinical  
158 presentation may be modified by age, previous immunisation or infection, antibiotic  
159 exposure and concurrent infection with other pathogens [9]. This makes the presentation  
160 of pertussis frequently atypical, thus requiring laboratory confirmation of cases by  
161 serology, culture or polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Therefore, laboratory confirmation  
162 by either PCR, culture or paired serological assays was also an inclusion criterion.

163

164 Studies that failed to provide a numerator (number of participants testing positive) or  
165 denominator (number of participants tested for pertussis), as well as those that failed to  
166 specify the laboratory diagnostic method utilized, were excluded. Studies on sero-  
167 epidemiological and laboratory diagnostic methods in the absence of clinical disease were  
168 also excluded.

169

## 170 **Data extraction**

171 The denominator and numerator were extracted from each study to determine prevalence  
172 for each diagnostic method. We defined prevalence as proportions with confirmed  
173 laboratory diagnosis from all participants suspected and tested for pertussis. *Bordetella*  
174 *pertussis* prevalence data were stratified by WHO region, diagnostic method (culture,  
175 paired serology or PCR), clinical setting (hospital or population based) and age category  
176 of the study participants. Prevalence was further stratified by HIV status, that is HIV

177 infected (HIV+), HIV-exposed uninfected (HEU) and HIV-unexposed uninfected (HUU).  
178 HEU was used in reference to infants.

179

180 Incidence data were extracted as reported by the authors.

181

182 The epidemiology of *Bordetella parapertussis* was separately assessed. Data on the type  
183 of pertussis vaccine (wP or aP) used, clinical diagnostic criteria (e.g. WHO, CDC, etc.),  
184 and the study design were captured.

185

186 Non-English language articles were reviewed and data extracted with the assistance of  
187 online translation programs and native speakers [17, 18].

188

### 189 **Data analysis and reporting**

190 Percentage point-estimates together with their 95% confidence intervals (CIs) were  
191 calculated to represent prevalence of laboratory-confirmed pertussis for all outcomes. The  
192 Mantel-Haenszel method was used to pool together prevalence data from individual  
193 studies using random-effects meta-analysis. Heterogeneity was evaluated both visually by  
194 assessing forest plots and formally using the  $\chi^2$ -based Q and I<sup>2</sup> statistics [19]. Where a  
195 meta-analysis was not feasible, either because data were too heterogeneous or insufficient  
196 to allow for meaningful pooling, narrative reporting was used. Narratively reported  
197 frequencies were summarized using medians and interquartile ranges (IQR) of prevalence  
198 point estimates and graphically represented using forest-like plots that omitted pooled  
199 data. Instead dotted lines were used to indicate where group averages would lie without  
200 emphasizing their meaning. The Kruskal-Wallis test was used to compare point  
201 prevalence between groups.

202

203 Incidence of pertussis could not be independently estimated as the requisite data was not  
204 available. Incidence was narratively reported per 100 000 as reported by the authors  
205 themselves.

206 All statistical analyses were done on STATA software version 14 (STATA Corporation,  
207 College Station, TX). The command *metaprop\_one* was used to generate pooled  
208 prevalence forest plots after Freeman-Tukey transformation and *metan*, for comparative  
209 effect forest plots showing relative risks (RR) and their 95% CI, respectively.

210 The study utilized the guidelines for reporting systematic reviews as set down by the  
211 revised 2009 PRISMA Statement [20].

212

### 213 **Quality of included studies**

214 An adaptation of the tool developed by Wasserman *et al.*, was used to assess the risk of  
215 bias as well as the quality of the included studies [21]. The quality assessment criteria  
216 examined specific variables to make judgement on the studies, taking into account  
217 methodological aspects discussed by Hoy *et al.* pertaining to internal and external validity  
218 of prevalence studies [22].<sup>22</sup>

219

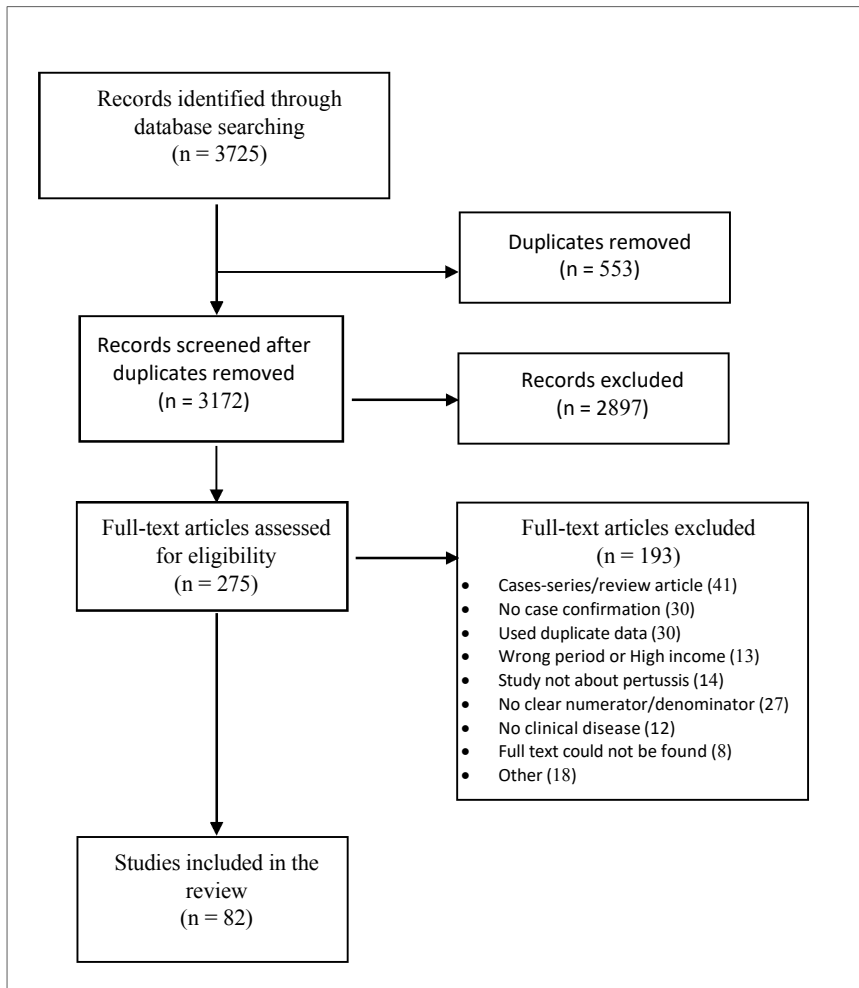
## 220 **RESULTS**

221

### 222 **Characteristics of the included studies**

223 The search strategy returned 3 725 studies which reduced to 3172 after excluding  
224 duplicates. Following screening of abstracts and titles, 275 articles were deemed  
225 potentially relevant and subjected to full-text evaluation. Eighty-two studies (n=49 167)  
226 met the final criteria for inclusion into the systematic review; Figure 1. Amongst others,  
227 studies were excluded if they did not report clinical cases such as in laboratory studies,  
228 animal studies, economic evaluation and modelling studies. The included studies

229 involved symptomatic individuals meeting WHO and CDC (n=52 and n=8 respectively)  
 230 clinical criteria. The remaining studies (n=22) used clinical definitions derived from  
 231 modifications of the criteria set by WHO or CDC. Two studies were multinational (two  
 232 and seven countries in each) so that in the end the final 82 studies included, represented  
 233 88 unique populations.



234

235 **Figure 1: Studies included in the systematic review**

236

237 Table 2 shows the characteristics of the included studies by WHO region. A large  
 238 proportion of the studies (n=63; 77%) was published between 2010 and 2018. Sixty-eight  
 239 studies (83%) involved hospital-based participants. Forty-seven studies (57%) used one  
 240 laboratory diagnostic confirmatory test while 32 (39%) and three (4%) studies used two  
 241 and three methods for pertussis diagnosis, respectively.

**Table 2: Characteristics of studies included in the systematic review**

Region & Study	Design	Setting	Diagnosis	Country	Vaccine	Period	Sample (cases)
<b>Africa</b>							
Voorhoeve# (1978)[23]	Surveillance	Population	C, S	Kenya	wP	1974-77	1078 (138)
Ramkissoon (1991)[24]	Clinical trial	Population	S	South Africa	wP	1988	112 (3)
Strebel (1991)[25]	Surveillance	Hospital	C, S	South Africa	wP	1989	34 (3)
Simondon (1997)[26]	Clinical trial	Population	C, P, S	Senegal	wP & aP	1990-95	3619 (193)
Anukam# (2004)[27]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C	Nigeria	wP	1997-00	296 (22)
Lassmann (2008)[28]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Gabon	wP	2003-04	99 (6)
Jusot# (2014)[29]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Niger	wP	2010-11	305 (34)
Kayina (2016)[30]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Uganda	wP	2013	449 (67)
Barger-Kamate (2016)[31]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Multinational	wP & aP	2011-14	3451 (52)
Gill (2016)[32]	Cohort	Population	P	Zambia	wP	2015	775 (10)
Hallbauer# (2016)[33]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	South Africa	aP	2008-15	1259 (183)
Muloiwa# (2016)[34]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	South Africa	aP	2011-12	460 (41)
Nunes (2016)[35]	Clinical trial	Population	P	South Africa	aP	2011-12	1644 (79)
Soofie (2016)[36]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	South Africa	aP	2015	1839 (42)
Zar (2016)[37]	Cohort	Population	P	South Africa	aP	2012-14	284 (16)
du Plessis# (2018)[38]	Surveillance	Hospital	C, P	South Africa	aP	2013-15	990 (76)
<b>Eastern Mediterranean</b>							
Al-Bargish# (1999)[39]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C	Iran	wP	1996	133 (67)
Kakar (2009)[40]	Surveillance	Hospital	C	Afghanistan	wP	2006-07	203 (7)
Ghanaie# (2010)[41]	Cross-Sectional	Population	C, P	Iran	wP	2007-08	328 (27)
Bokhari# (2011)[42]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Pakistan	wP	2005-09	802 (64)
Hajia (2012)[43]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Iran	wP	2008-11	138 (12)
Mughal (2012)[44]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C	Pakistan	wP	2004-06	700 (22)
Zouari# (2012)[45]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Tunisia	wP	2007-11	599 (120)
Bahari (2013)[46]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C	Iran	wP	2008-12	156 (7)
Nikbin (2013)[47]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Iran	wP	2009-10	779 (100)
Saffar (2014)[48]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Iran	wP	2008-12	518 (43)
Sedaghat# (2014)[49]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Iran	wP	2004-08	347 (30)
Benamrouche (2016)[50]	Surveillance	Hospital	C, P	Algeria	wP	2012-13	246 (123)
Ghorbani (2016)[51]	Surveillance	Hospital	P	Iran	wP	2011-13	3629 (239)
Omer (2016)[52]	Surveillance	Hospital	P	Pakistan	wP	2015-16	2021(8)
Katfy# (2017)[53]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Morocco	wP	2013-15	156 (88)
Ben Fraji# (2018) [54]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Tunisia	wP	2007-17	1844 (306)
Dumaidi (2018)[55]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	West Bank	wP	2004-08	267 (130)
Mohammadzadeh (2018)[56]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Iran	wP	20015-16	184 (43)
<b>Europe</b>							
Lukić-Gričić# (1999)[57]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, S	Croatia	wP	1988-94	201(2)
Dağla (2004)[58]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C	Turkey	wP	2001-03	66 (2)
Aksakal (2007)[59]	Cross-Sectional	Population	S	Turkey	wP	2004	307 (51)
Yıldırım (2008)[60]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P, S	Turkey	wP	2005-06	148 (16)
Medkova (2010)[61]	Cross-Sectional	Unclear	C, P	Russian Fed.	wP	Unknown	172 (81)
Gürsel (2012)[62]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P, S	Turkey	aP	2009-10	51 (6)
Karlı (2013)[63]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Turkey	aP	2008-12	40 (6)
Uslu (2013)[64]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Turkey	aP	2012	173 (48)
Dinu (2014)[65]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P, S	Romania	aP	2012-13	51 (14)
Karagül (2014)[66]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Turkey	aP	2010-11	214 (26)
Öksüz# (2014)[67]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Turkey	aP	2010-13	410 (106)
Aslan (2016)[68]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Turkey	aP	2013-14	101 (20)
Goktas (2016)[69]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Turkey	aP	2014-15	845 (15)

Gökçe (2018)[70]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Turkey	aP	2013-16	172 (44)
<b>South-East Asia</b>							
Singh (1987)[71]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C	India	wP	c.1986	560 (20)
Dahiya (2009)[72]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	India	wP	2007-07	21 (2)
Barger-Kamate (2016)[31]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Multinational	wP	2011-14	749 (1)
Das (2016)[73]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	India	wP	2013-14	180 (7)
Siriyakorn (2016)[74]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Thailand	wP	2010-11	76 (14)
Hughes# (2017)[75]	Cohort	Population	P	Nepal	wP	2011-14	2026 (17)
Chinthate (2018)[76]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Thailand	wP	2016-17	70 (7)
<b>The Americas</b>							
Cooper (1983)[77]	Surveillance	Hospital	C, S	St Lucia	wP	1981	10 (2)
Baptista (2006)[78]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C	Brazil	wP	2003	287 (51)
Kowalzik (2007)	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Multinational	wP & aP	2001-4	181 (19)
Sandoval (2008)[79]	Cross-Sectional	Population	P	Mexico	wP	2002-03	61 (20)
Nieto Guevara (2010)[80]	Surveillance	Hospital	C, P	Panama	wP & aP	2001-08	759 (178)
Astudillo (2011)[81]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Colombia	wP	2006-07	133 (45)
Leite (2012)[82]	Surveillance	Hospital	C	Brazil	wP	2006-08	652 (132)
Ferronato (2013)[83]	Cohort	Hospital	C, P	Brazil	wP	2009-12	57 (25)
Ochoa-Perez (2014)[84]	Surveillance	Hospital	C, P	Mexico	aP	2011-12	147 (59)
Vaz-de-Lima (2014)[85]	Surveillance	Hospital	P	Brazil	wP	2009-12	503 (66)
Castillo (2015)[86]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Peru	wP	2010-12	392 (155)
Pavic-Espinoza (2015)[87]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Peru	wP	2009-10	596 (114)
Pimentel (2015)[88]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Brazil	wP	2010-11	192 (10)
del Valle-Mendoza (2015)[89]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Peru	wP	2010-13	133 (51)
Bailon# (2016)[90]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Peru	wP	2012	840 (191)
Aquino-Andrade# (2017)[91]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Mexico	aP	2011-14	286 (192)
Phadke (2018) # [92]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Guatemala	wP	2009-12	301 (11)
del Valle-Mendoza (2018)[93]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Peru	wP	20016-17	88 (18)
<b>Western Pacific</b>							
Ong (1978)[94]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C	Malaysia	wP	1974	65 (1)
Lin (2010)[95]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	China	wP	2008-09	1001 (99)
Mi (2013)[96]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	China	wP	2011-12	176 (51)
Ting (2013)[97]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	Malaysia	wP	2011	707 (275)
Huang (2014)[98]	Surveillance	Population	P	China	wP & aP	2010-12	1022 (113)
Liu (2014)[99]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	China	wP	2013	148 (101)
Wang (2014)[100]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	C, P	China	wP & aP	2012-13	313 (122)
Hu (2015)[101]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	China	aP	2013-14	2536 (247)
Moriuchi (2017)[102]	Cross-Sectional	Unclear	P	Cambodia	wP	2008-16	651 (82)
Sadiasa (2017)[103]	Cross-Sectional	Hospital	P	Philippines	wP	2012-15	1152 (34)

NB. "Sample" refers to all individuals tested for pertussis in each study; C=culture; P=polymerase chain reaction, S=paired serology; wP= whole cell vaccine; aP=acellular vaccine; # includes *Bordetella parapertussis*

242

243 Study designs included three clinical trials, four cohort, 62 cross-sectional and 13

244 surveillance studies. There were 71 studies published in English, four in Mandarin, three

245 each in Spanish and Turkish, and one in Persian. Three studies by Strebel et al, Al-Bargish

246 et al, and Cooper and Fitch, were conducted in outbreak settings [25, 39, 77].



247

248 In total, the studies originated from 37 countries, representing all six WHO regions;  
249 Additional file 1. Nineteen (51%) of the countries represented were upper-middle income,  
250 while 11 (30%) and seven (19%) were lower-middle and low-income countries,  
251 respectively. Five countries contributed 28 (49%) of the studies (Turkey=11, Iran=9,  
252 South Africa=8, China=6 and Brazil=6). Sixty-four (78%) studies had epidemiological  
253 data for *Bordetella pertussis* only while 18 (22%) studies investigated for both *Bordetella*  
254 *pertussis* and *Bordetella parapertussis*. The most frequently used vaccine over the period  
255 the included studies were conducted was wP in 72/88 (82%) settings either on its own  
256 (n=66) or in combination with aP (n=6). In 16 (18%) settings aP was the only vaccine in  
257 use.

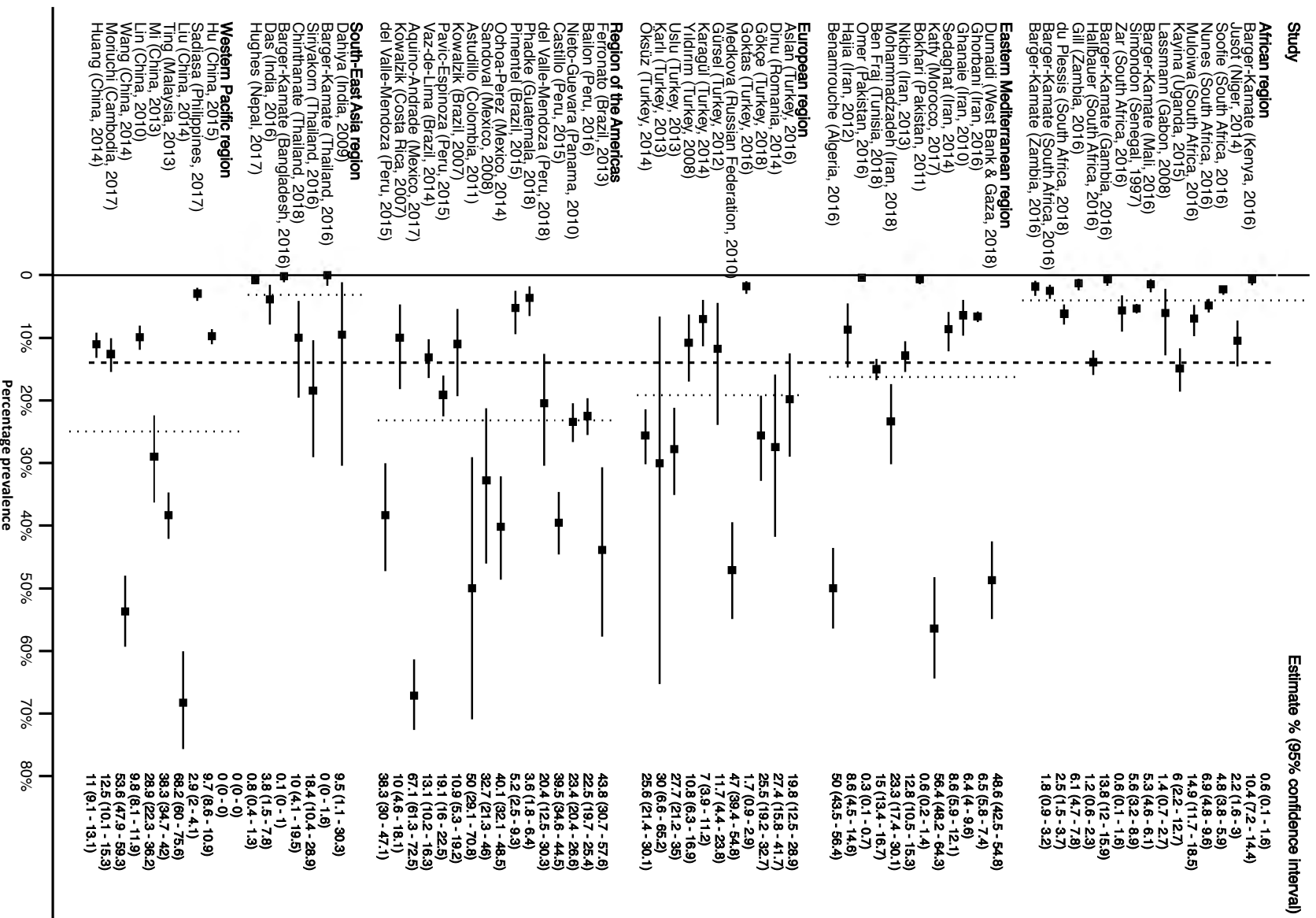
258

259 Data from a study by Zouari *et al.* was considered only for the purpose of estimating  
260 mortality but not for estimation of disease burden as its data overlapped with that of Ben  
261 Fraj *et al.* who reported cases over a longer period but did not report on mortality [45, 54].

262

### 263 **Prevalence of pertussis**

264 The median prevalence of PCR- confirmed disease due to *Bordetella pertussis* was 11%  
265 (IQR, 5-27%; n=43 696, 64 studies). Figure 2 and Additional file 2. PCR prevalence  
266 differed across WHO regions ranging from a median of 4% (IQR 4-10%) in South-East  
267 Asia to median of 22% (IQR 12- 40%) in the Region of the Americas; P=0.001. In one  
268 multinational study, conducted in countries in the Africa and South-East Asia regions,  
269 Barger-Kamate *et al.*, found an increased risk for pertussis in African countries with an  
270 adjusted odd ratio of 8.8 (P = 0.03)[31].

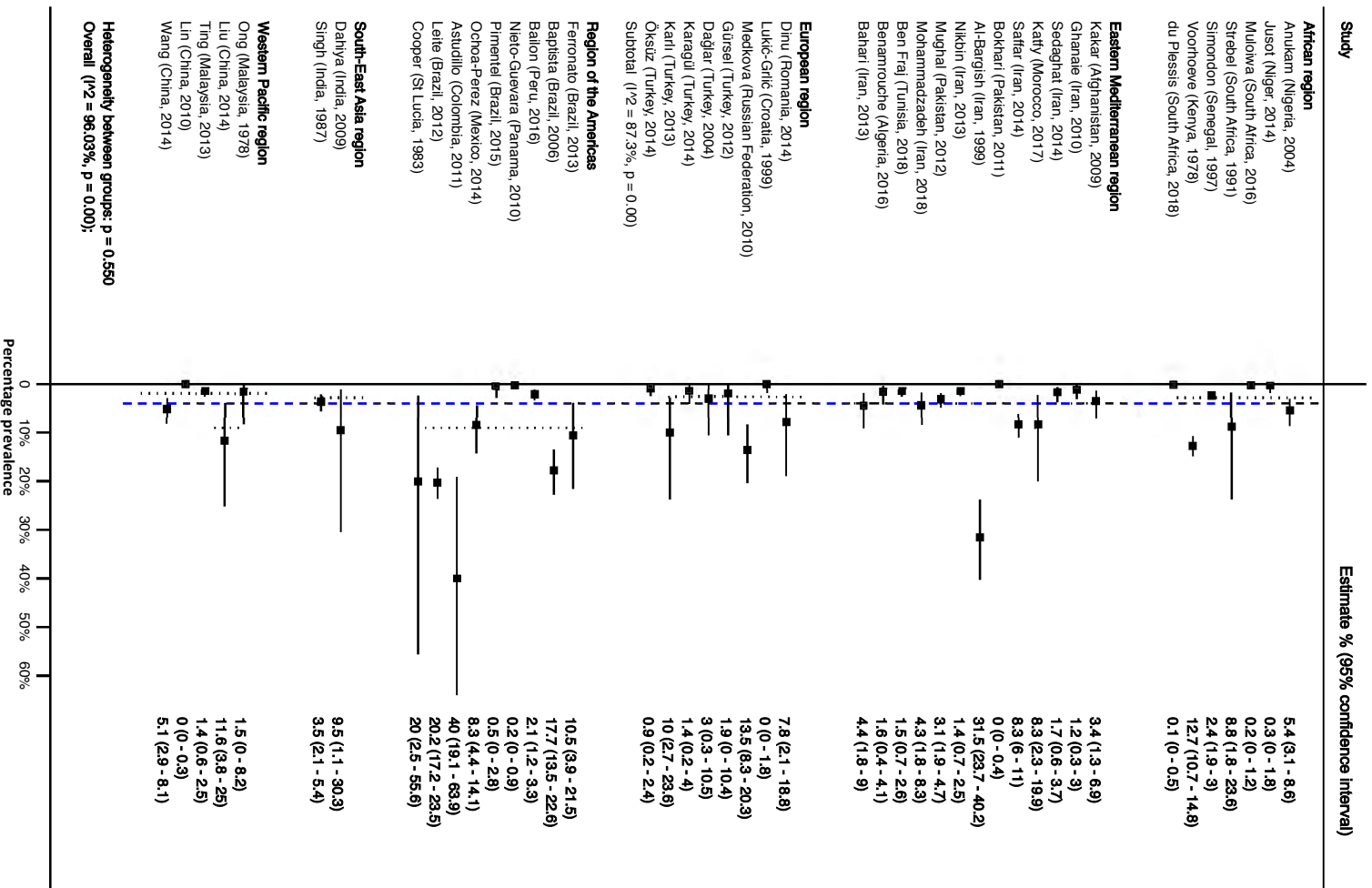


**Figure 2. Prevalence (proportion testing positive) of polymerase chain reaction confirmed *Bordetella pertussis*. Dotted lines show subgroup and whole group average estimates**

271  
272  
273  
274  
275

276 The median prevalence of culture-confirmed *Bordetella pertussis* was 3% (IQR 1-9%);  
 277 n=18 868, 44 studies). The point prevalence was similar across WHO regions; P=0.1380.

278 Figure 3 and Additional file 2.



279  
 280 **Figure 3. Prevalence (proportion testing positive) of culture confirmed *Bordetella***  
 281 ***pertussis*. Dotted lines show subgroup and whole group average estimates.**

282 Confirmation of *Bordetella pertussis* using paired serology showed a median of 17% (IQR  
283 3-23%; n=4 912, 9 studies). Only three WHO regions were represented and median  
284 prevalence was 3% (IQR 3-13%) in the African region and 17% (95% CI, 13-26%) in the  
285 European region, while the one country, St Lucia, representing the Region of the  
286 Americas had a prevalence of 44% (95% CI, 14-79%); P=0.1309. Additional file 2 and  
287 Additional file 3.

288

289 The prevalence of confirmed *Bordetella parapertussis* infection using any of the three  
290 confirmatory methods was 1% (IQR, 0-2%; n=12 062, 18 studies). The Eastern  
291 Mediterranean region was noted to have the highest prevalence with a median 2% (IQR 0-  
292 7%) with one study from the same region having a prevalence of 19% (95% CI 13-  
293 26%).[39] . Additional file 4.

294

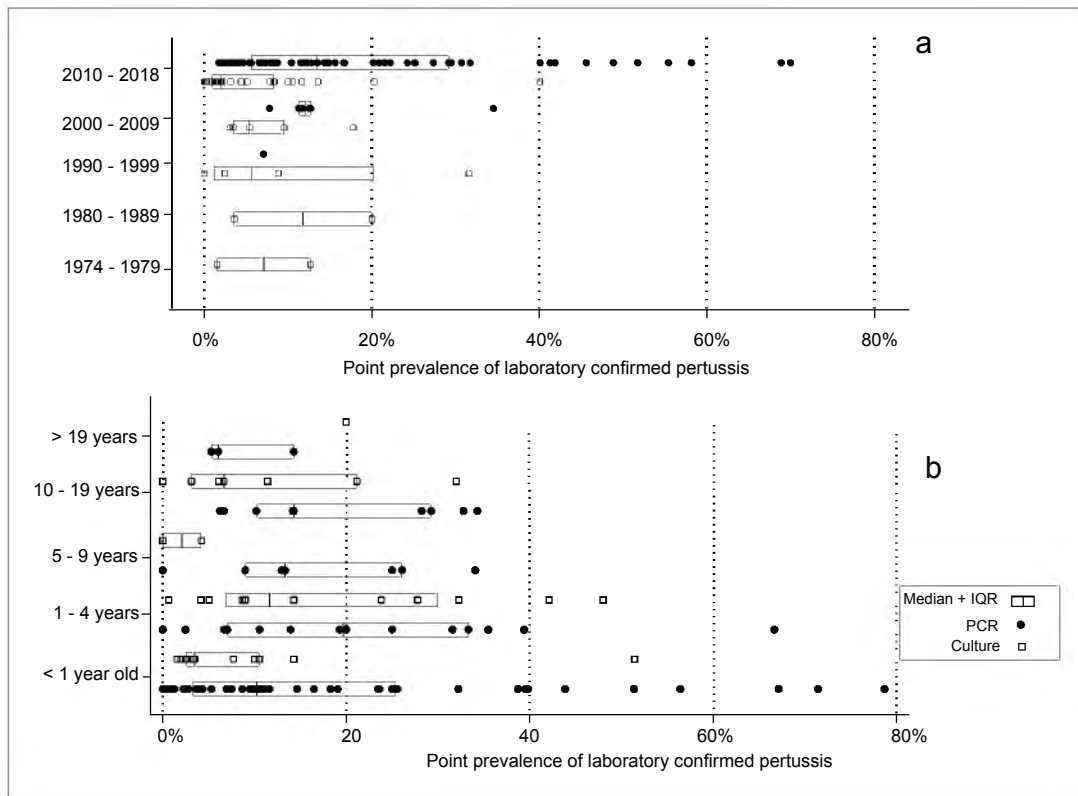
295 Prevalence of *Bordetella pertussis* differed in the same population depending on the  
296 method of laboratory confirmation used. On average, culture underestimated prevalence  
297 by 85% (RR=0.15, 95% CI, 0.10-0.22) compared to PCR in the 29 (n=14 315) studies that  
298 used both methods. (Additional file 5).

299

300 Pertussis prevalence declined in the 1990's from the levels seen in the 70's and 80's. A  
301 slight increase was noted since the period after 2000. Figure 4a. Huang *et al.*, reported a  
302 26-fold increase in confirmed adult pertussis between 2010 and 2014 in China [98]. There  
303 was sufficient information in 48 studies to estimate age prevalence by age group. The  
304 lowest prevalence was noted in individuals older than 19 years with median prevalence of  
305 6% (IQR 5 -14%). After the high prevalence noted below five years of age, the risk  
306 declined in late childhood (6 to 10 years) but increased again in adolescents who showed

307 the highest prevalence of all groups with a median prevalence of 20% (IQR 14 - 32%).

308 Figure 4b.



309

310 **Figure 4. Distribution of point prevalence (proportion testing positive) of polymerase**  
311 **chain reaction and culture confirmed pertussis by period (a) and age group (b)**  
312

313 Pertussis prevalence was also stratified by the study setting (hospital versus population-  
314 based) as well as by the type of vaccine used in settings where the included studies were  
315 conducted. The prevalence of pertussis in hospital-based studies had a median of 10%  
316 (IQR 4-25%) compared to population-based studies which reported median prevalence of  
317 6% (IQR 3-13%). There was an overlap in the distribution of prevalence of confirmed  
318 pertussis in populations using aP only [ Median 10% (IQR 6-28%)] compared to  
319 populations using some wP [Median 10% (IQR 3-20%)]. The overlap remained even  
320 when prevalence was stratified by diagnostic method. In the only included clinical trial  
321 comparing the two vaccine types, Simondon *et al.*, found aP vaccine efficacy against all  
322 confirmed pertussis to be 85% (95% CI, 66-93%) and that of wP to be 96% (95% CI, 86-  
323 99%)[26].

324 **Incidence of pertussis**

325 Population level incidence rates of pertussis and hospitalisation were reported by some of  
 326 the authors, but these could not be independently verified as the requisite population data  
 327 were not available; Table 3. In addition, a majority of the authors reported point estimates  
 328 incidences with no confidence intervals. Where data was available for different age groups  
 329 [Voorhoeve *et al*, Nieto Guevara *et al*, Saffar *et al* and Ochoa-Perez *et al*] the incidence  
 330 was always highest in infancy.[23, 48, 80, 84] The highest incidence of 15 900/100 000  
 331 was reported in Kenyan infants between 1974 and 1977 before the introduction of wP.  
 332 [23] In addition to *Bordetella pertussis* incidence, Ghanaie *et al* reported a separate  
 333 incidence of 2 per 100 000 for *Bordetella parapertussis*.[41] Contacts were reported to  
 334 have an incidence of 0.69/100 000 in Benamrouche *et al*'s study.[50].

335

**Table 3: Population and hospitalisation incidence rates of *Bordetella pertussis***

Study (Year)	Incidence	Age ranges	Country
Voorhoeve (1978)[23]	3800/100 000	All ages	Kenya
Strebel# (1991)[25]	187/100 000	6 months to 5 years	South Africa
Simondon (1997)[26]	119/100 000	2 months to 15 years	Senegal
Sandoval (2008)[79]	500/100 000	12 years to 15 years	Mexico
Ghanaie (2010)[41]	318/100 000	6 years to 14 years	Iran
Nieto Guevara# (2010)[80]	144/100 000	All ages	Panama
Uslu (2013)[64]	0.9/100 000	< 5 years	Turkey
Huang (2014)[98]	23.52/100 000	All ages	China
Jusot (2014)[29]	820/100 000	< 5 years	Niger
Ochoa-Perez (2014)[84]	2.3/100 000	0 year to > 18 years	Mexico
Saffar (2014)[48]	4.92/100 000	0 month to 25 years	Iran
Benamrouche (2016)[50]	1.04/100 000	All ages	Algeria
Gill (2016)[32]	520/100 000	< 1 year	Zambia
Muloiwa# (2016)[34]	526/100 000	< 13 years	South Africa
Omer (2016)[52]	247/100 000	< 1 year	Pakistan
Soofie (2016)[36]	220/100 000	< 1 year	South Africa
Giayetto (2017)[104]	4.53/100 000	All ages	Argentina
Ben Fraj (2018)[54]	134/100 000	< 5 years	Tunisia

# Incidence represents hospitalisation rates for pertussis

336

337 Time-denominated rates were recorded for three community-based studies. Gill *et al.*  
338 reported a rate of 2.4 (95% CI, 1.2-4.2) cases per 1000 infant-months with the highest rate  
339 of 3.5 cases/1000 infant-months noted between birth and six weeks while Hughes *et al*  
340 reported a rate of 13.3(95% CI, 7.7-21.3) cases per 1000 infant-years.[32, 75] Nunes *et*  
341 *al.*'s data gave an overall rate of 4.9 per 1000 person-months, which differed between  
342 infants (5.7/1000) and mothers (4.3/1000) as well as by HIV status as reported below.[35]

343

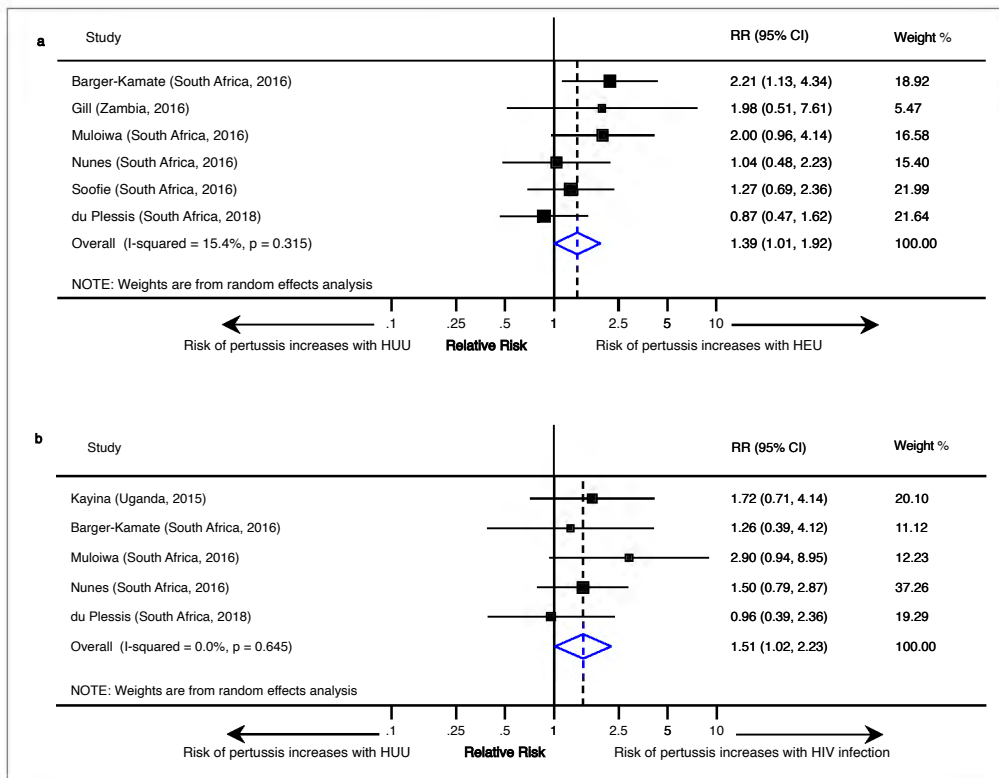
#### 344 **Risk of pertussis in HIV exposed and infected**

345 Ten studies, all from the Africa region, investigated the impact of HIV status on the risk  
346 of pertussis. The incidence rate of pertussis was 7.4/1000 infant-months in HEU infants  
347 and 5.5/1000 in HUU infants in the study by Nunes *et al.* while the rates in HIV+ and HIV  
348 uninfected mothers were 6.8 and 3.9/1000 respectively.[35] Gill *et al.*, reported RR 1.8  
349 (95% CI, 95% CI 0.5 - 6.9) in HEU infants compared to HUU. The incidence of  
350 *Bordetella pertussis*-associated hospitalisation was 2.9 (95% CI, 1.8-4.5) and 1.9 (95% CI,  
351 1.3-2.6) per 1000 in HIV-exposed and HIV-unexposed infants, respectively in a study by  
352 Soofie *et al.* The reported 4.8% case fatality rate in Soofie *et al* was only due to deaths in  
353 HIV-exposed infants.[36] In the study by Hallbauer *et al.*, there was insufficient data to  
354 estimate stratum specific rates, but HIV+ cases, who made 14% of the study sample,  
355 accounted for 22 (19%) of the 113 pertussis cases with known HIV status.[33] A gradual  
356 increase in risk of pertussis was reported in a study by Muloiwa *et al* in which the risk of  
357 pertussis was 5.4% in HUU, 10.9% in HEU and 15.8% in HIV+.[34]

358

359 There was sufficient data to do a metanalysis comparing risk of pertussis in HUU with  
360 HEU and HIV+ in six and five studies, respectively. Compared to HUU, HIV+ and HEU  
361 individuals had a RR 1.51 (95% CI, 1.02-2.23) and RR 1.4 (95% CI, 1.01-1.92) for  
362 confirmed pertussis, respectively. Figure 5. The highest risk of pertussis was reported by

363 Anukam *et al.*, in a cohort of wP vaccinated HIV infected adolescents who were not on  
 364 antiretroviral therapy with RR 22.8 (95% CI, 6.9-75.1).[27]. This study was not included  
 365 in the HIV metanalysis as it was an obvious outlier composed of individuals not on  
 366 treatment which seemed to show excessive risk for pertussis. All other studies involved  
 367 HIV+ individuals on antiretroviral therapy.



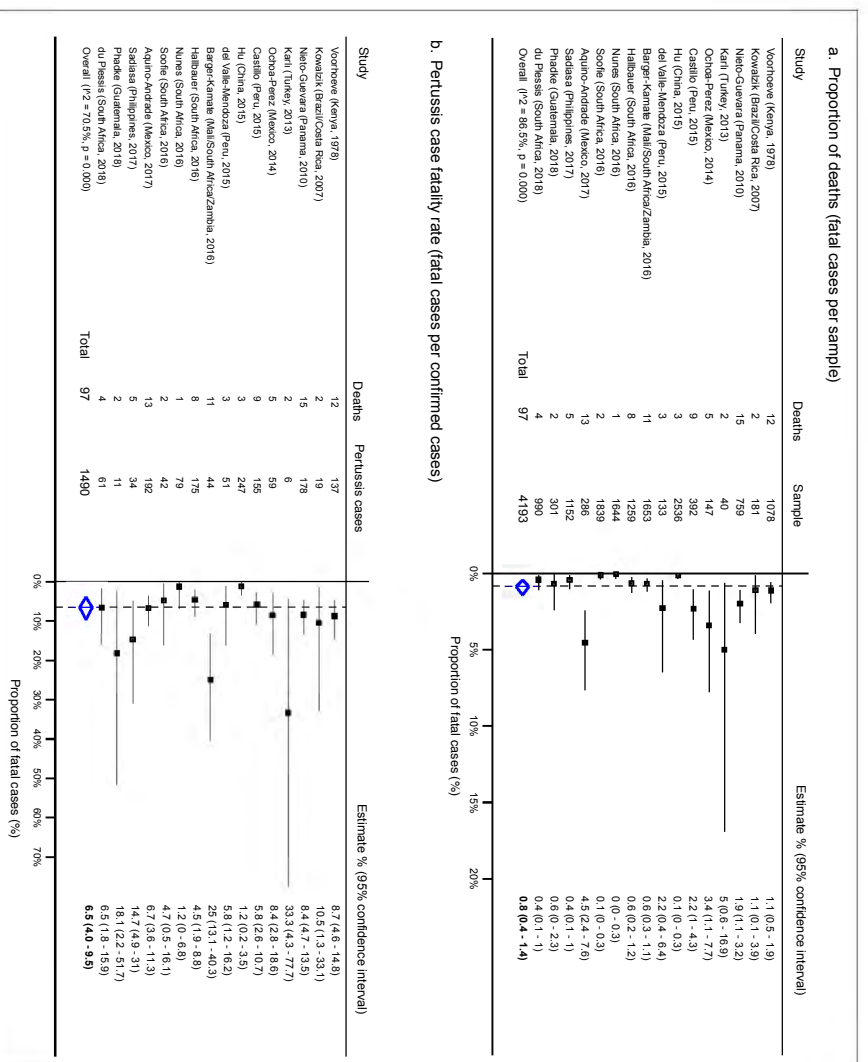
368  
 369 **Figure 5. Meta-analysis of the relative risk of pertussis comparing HIV unexposed uninfected**  
 370 **(HUU) to HIV exposed uninfected (HEU) (a) and HIV infected (b)**  
 371

372 **Deaths and case fatality rate of pertussis**

373 A total of 97 pertussis related deaths out of 1490 confirmed cases were reported in 16  
 374 studies (n=14390) representing 13 countries. All deaths were associated with *Bordetella*  
 375 *pertussis* with none attributed to *Bordetella parapertussis*. From the 16 studies, the overall  
 376 proportion of deaths was 0.8 % (95% CI, 0.4-1.4%) with a pertussis case fatality rate of  
 377 6.5% (95% CI, 4.0-9.5%). Figure 6. When only infants were considered (13 studies), the  
 378 case fatality rate was 7.2% (95% CI, 3.6-11.8 %) in the studies reporting deaths.

379





380 **Figure 6. Mortality and case fatality rate of confirmed pertussis**

381 All children who died were younger than five years and the majority were younger than  
 382 six months of age. Almost all deaths occurred under one year of age with only one study  
 383 (Voorhoeve *et al*, 1978) reporting pertussis deaths after the second year of life (n=5). [23]

384 **Quality of the included studies**

385 Using the modified tool published with the protocol for this systematic review, we found  
 386 all the included studies to be of high quality. [14] This is because components of the  
 387 quality index score, such as laboratory confirmation and availability of raw denominator  
 388 and numerator data formed part of the inclusion criteria; which automatically excluded  
 389 poor quality status. Similarly, studies had moderate to low risk of attrition and selection  
 390 bias.

395 **Discussion**

396 This study comprehensively reports on the burden of confirmed pertussis over a 45-year  
397 period (1974-2018) in LMICs. This period starts in 1974 with the inception of EPI.  
398 Prevalence of confirmed pertussis disease differed in the same study depending on the  
399 method of laboratory confirmation with PCR showing the greatest diagnostic sensitivity as  
400 expected.[4] Most cases were due to *Bordetella pertussis*. *Bordetella parapertussis* was  
401 less common and did not have any reported fatalities associated with it. The study  
402 indicates that pertussis deaths are significantly high in LMICs with a disproportionate case  
403 fatality rate in young infants. Secondly, the metanalysis shows that HIV has a significant  
404 impact in the burden of pertussis in settings where the burden of HIV is high.

405

406 Not surprisingly, the findings from our study agree with those from some HICs: the  
407 highest incidence of pertussis was in infants and the greatest pertussis-specific mortality in  
408 children younger than 6 months.[105-107] Moreover, we also noted the increase in the  
409 prevalence of pertussis in adolescents similarly described in highly vaccinated cohorts  
410 from HICs.[108-110] The noted decline in adulthood may indicate protection following  
411 the natural boosting in adolescence. Worryingly, the pooled case fatality rate of nearly 6%  
412 exceeds the less than 4% estimated by WHO for developing countries.[2] As noted this is  
413 even higher when only infants are considered.

414

415 Prevalence data presented in this systematic review suggests that LMICs may also be  
416 experiencing a resurgence of pertussis as noted in HICs. Both the GPI and WHO advocate  
417 for the strengthening of surveillance systems as a key component in the control of  
418 pertussis.[108, 111] Currently, surveillance of pertussis in LMICs is suboptimal. As a

419 result, there are many gaps in accurate pertussis epidemiological data which we observed  
420 in this study. The review indicates that the choice of laboratory case-confirmation  
421 influences the quantification of pertussis disease burden within the same setting. This is an  
422 important finding that suggests that use of PCR to confirm pertussis should be prioritized  
423 in LMICs. The higher sensitivity of PCR is more likely to capture the true burden of  
424 pertussis and give a better understanding of the global epidemiological pattern of the  
425 disease across different settings than any other method. In contrast, culture, recognized as  
426 the diagnostic gold standard missed on average 85% of cases identified by PCR in the  
427 studies that used both methods in this systematic review.

428

429 A number of authors reported incidences although population denominators could not be  
430 independently verified as these went largely unreported. The rates were quite high  
431 compared to HICs and showed no pattern of decline over the period in which the  
432 incidences were reported.

433

434 An unexpected finding was the significant overlap in the prevalence of pertussis noted  
435 with different vaccines in use. Most LMICs use wP vaccines in contrast with the  
436 predominant use of aP vaccines in HICs. In general wP vaccines are regarded as offering  
437 better protection against pertussis.[112] Despite the predominant use of wP in the  
438 reviewed studies, we noted a steady increase in confirmed pertussis since in studies  
439 reporting after 2000. This suggests that the observed resurgence of pertussis noted in HIC  
440 may only be partly explained by the change of vaccine from wP to aP in these countries.  
441 Another possible explanation for the increase may be the increase in the use of PCR for  
442 case confirmation – all the included studies conducted after 2010 used PCR as the primary

443 method of confirming cases. The increase in the observed prevalence coincides with the  
444 use of these molecular techniques.

445

446 Although data are limited, there is strong evidence from the metanalysis showing that the  
447 risk of pertussis is increased in HIV+ and HEU individuals. The risk of pertussis was  
448 increased by 50% and 40% respectively in the two groups compared to HUU. With the  
449 exception of the study by du Plessis *et al.*, all studies showed increased risk of pertussis  
450 incidence or prevalence associated with HIV infection or exposure.[38] In addition, there  
451 was a higher risk of hospitalisation and deaths related to pertussis in HIV exposed or  
452 infected infants.[32, 35, 36] In considering their pertussis control strategies, LMICs,  
453 which have the biggest burden of HIV, need to take into account this increased risk  
454 associated with HIV exposure and infection.[7]

455

456 Our study is largely limited by paucity of data, especially longitudinal data for each  
457 included country as well as vaccine coverage in the specific population studied. In  
458 addition, case detection may have been affected by different selection criteria used as well  
459 as the variability of PCR assays used to confirm cases. Regardless, our results will  
460 encourage generation of more epidemiological studies on pertussis in LMICs, while in the  
461 meantime, assisting policy makers in disease control planning.

## 462 **CONCLUSIONS**

463 This study indicates an urgent need to review the existing pertussis control programs in  
464 LMICs to target children, adolescents, and HIV exposed and infected groups. In addition  
465 the study highlights the need to urgently consider measures to reduce the high infant

466 mortality rate, with specific consideration for maternal vaccination that has been shown to  
467 be effective in protecting young infants even in an LMIC setting.[113] In their  
468 recommendation, the GPI in addition to prioritizing surveillance, made this an urgent area  
469 of action for LMICs.[5] Encouragingly, we noted a substantial increase in the number of  
470 studies published in the last eight years of the period under review (2010-2018), possibly  
471 reflecting recent increase in interest and funding for pertussis research in LMICs.

## 472 **LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS**

473 aP - acellular vaccine  
474 CIs - confidence intervals  
475 EPI - Expanded Programme on Immunisation  
476 GPI - Global Pertussis Initiative  
477 HEU - HIV-exposed uninfected  
478 HICs - High Income Countries  
479 HIV+ - HIV infected  
480 HUU - HIV-unexposed uninfected  
481 IQR - interquartile range  
482 LMICs - Low and Middle-Income Countries  
483 PCR - polymerase chain reaction  
484 WHO - World Health Organization  
485 wP - whole cell vaccine

486

## 487 **DECLARATIONS**

488

### 489 **Ethics approval and consent to participate**

490 The study did not recruit participants. As the study employed secondary analysis of data  
491 already in the public domain, no Institutional Review Board or Ethics Committee was  
492 approached to give approval for this study.

493

494

495 **Consent for publication**

496 No consent for publication was required. All authors read and approved the final  
497 manuscript.

498

499 **Availability of data and materials**

500 All data generated or analysed during this study are included in this published article and  
501 in the reference list provided, all of which are in the public domain.

502

503 **Competing interests**

504 The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

505

506 **Funding**

507 No funding was received for the submitted work

508

509 **Authors' contributions**

510 RM conceived the research project, extracted the data, designed and executed the  
511 analyses, interpreted the findings, wrote the first draft, and revised drafts of the  
512 manuscript. BK contributed to search strategy, study selection, and revision of manuscript.

513 ME revised drafts of the report and contributed to the interpretation of the findings. GH  
514 contributed to the interpretation of the findings and supervised the research project. All  
515 authors reviewed the final manuscript.

516

517 **Acknowledgments**

518 The authors wish to thank Drs Tunc Numanoglu and Nei-yuan Hsiao for assisting with  
519 translation of non-English full texts.

520

521 **TITLES OF INCLUDED ADDITIONAL FILES**

522 **Additional file 1:** Country and year of included studies with confirmed pertussis shown  
523 by World Health Organization region

524 **Additional file 2:** Distribution of point prevalence of confirmed pertussis by World  
525 Health Organization region and confirmation method [PCR = polymerase chain reaction]

526 **Additional file 3:** Prevalence of paired serology confirmed *Bordetella pertussis*. Dotted  
527 lines show subgroup and whole group average estimates

528 **Additional file 4:** Prevalence of polymerase chain reaction and culture confirmed  
529 *Bordetella parapertussis*. Dotted line shows group average estimate [# Culture confirmed]

530 **Additional file 5:** Meta-analysis of relative detection rates of polymerase chain reaction  
531 (PCR) and culture in confirming *Bordetella pertussis* infection

532

533

**References**

534

- 535 1. Crowcroft NS, Stein C, Duclos P, Birmingham M. How best to estimate the global burden  
536 of pertussis? *Lancet Infect Dis.* 2003;3(7):413-8. Epub 2003/07/03. PubMed PMID:  
537 12837346.
- 538 2. World Health Organization. Managing pertussis outbreaks during humanitarian  
539 emergencies : WHO technical note, February 2008. Geneva: World Health Organization;  
540 2008. 6 p. p.
- 541 3. Cherry JD. Pertussis: challenges today and for the future. *PLoS pathogens.*  
542 2013;9(7):e1003418. Epub 2013/08/13. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003418. PubMed  
543 PMID: 23935481; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC3723573.
- 544 4. Wood N, McIntyre P. Pertussis: review of epidemiology, diagnosis, management and  
545 prevention. *Paediatr Respir Rev.* 2008;9(3):201-11; quiz 11-2. Epub 2008/08/13. doi:  
546 S1526-0542(08)00041-9 [pii]  
547 10.1016/j.prrv.2008.05.010 [doi]. PubMed PMID: 18694712.
- 548 5. Muloiwa R, Wolter N, Mupere E, Tan T, Chitkara AJ, Forsyth KD, et al. Pertussis in  
549 Africa: Findings and recommendations of the Global Pertussis Initiative (GPI). *Vaccine.*  
550 2018;36(18):2385-93. Epub 2018/04/01. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2018.03.025. PubMed  
551 PMID: 29602703.
- 552 6. Machingaidze S, Wiysonge CS, Hussey GD. Strengthening the expanded programme on  
553 immunization in Africa: looking beyond 2015. *PLoS medicine.* 2013;10(3):e1001405.  
554 Epub 2013/03/26. doi: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1001405. PubMed PMID: 23526886;  
555 PubMed Central PMCID: PMC3601964.
- 556 7. Joint United Nations Programme on HIV/AIDS. UNAIDS Data 2017 [20 July 2018].  
557 Available from:  
558 [http://www.unaids.org/sites/default/files/media\\_asset/20170720\\_Data\\_book\\_2017\\_en.pdf](http://www.unaids.org/sites/default/files/media_asset/20170720_Data_book_2017_en.pdf).
- 559 8. Clark TA. Changing pertussis epidemiology: everything old is new again. *J Infect Dis.*  
560 2014;209(7):978-81. Epub 2014/03/15. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiu001. PubMed PMID:  
561 24626532.
- 562 9. Cherry JD, Tan T, Wirsing von Konig CH, Forsyth KD, Thisyakorn U, Greenberg D, et al.

- 563 Clinical definitions of pertussis: Summary of a Global Pertussis Initiative roundtable  
564 meeting, February 2011. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the*  
565 *Infectious Diseases Society of America*. 2012;54(12):1756-64. Epub 2012/03/21. doi:  
566 10.1093/cid/cis302. PubMed PMID: 22431797; PubMed Central PMCID:  
567 PMCPC3357482.
- 568 10. Zhang L, Prietsch SO, Axelsson I, Halperin SA. Acellular vaccines for preventing  
569 whooping cough in children. *The Cochrane database of systematic reviews*.  
570 2014;9:CD001478. Epub 2014/09/18. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD001478.pub6. PubMed  
571 PMID: 25228233.
- 572 11. Wendelboe AM, Njamkepo E, Bourillon A, Floret DD, Gaudelus J, Gerber M, et al.  
573 Transmission of *Bordetella pertussis* to young infants. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*.  
574 2007;26(4):293-9. Epub 2007/04/07. doi: 10.1097/01.inf.0000258699.64164.6d. PubMed  
575 PMID: 17414390.
- 576 12. Jardine A, Conaty SJ, Lowbridge C, Staff M, Vally H. Who gives pertussis to infants?  
577 Source of infection for laboratory confirmed cases less than 12 months of age during an  
578 epidemic, Sydney, 2009. *Communicable diseases intelligence quarterly report*.  
579 2010;34(2):116-21. Epub 2010/08/04. PubMed PMID: 20677421.
- 580 13. von Konig CH, Halperin S, Riffelmann M, Guiso N. Pertussis of adults and infants.  
581 *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2002;2(12):744-50. Epub 2002/12/07. doi: S1473309902004528 [pii].  
582 PubMed PMID: 12467690.
- 583 14. Muloiwa R, Kagina BM, Engel ME, Hussey GD. The burden of pertussis in low- and  
584 middle-income countries since the inception of the Expanded Programme on  
585 Immunization (EPI) in 1974: a systematic review protocol. *Systematic reviews*.  
586 2015;4:62. Epub 2015/05/02. doi: 10.1186/s13643-015-0053-z. PubMed PMID:  
587 25930111; PubMed Central PMCID: PMCPC4419482.
- 588 15. The World Bank. Country and Lending Groups [21 January 2019]. Available from:  
589 <http://data.worldbank.org/about/country-and-lending-groups>.
- 590 16. The World Bank. What is the World Bank Atlas method? [21 January 2019]. Available  
591 from: [https://datahelpdesk.worldbank.org/knowledgebase/articles/378832-what-is-the-](https://datahelpdesk.worldbank.org/knowledgebase/articles/378832-what-is-the-world-bank-atlas-method)  
592 [world-bank-atlas-method](https://datahelpdesk.worldbank.org/knowledgebase/articles/378832-what-is-the-world-bank-atlas-method).
- 593 17. Google Translate. Available from: <https://translate.google.com>.
- 594 18. DocTranslator. Available from: <https://www.onlinedoctranslator.com/translationform>.
- 595 19. Higgins JP, Thompson SG. Quantifying heterogeneity in a meta-analysis. *Stat Med*.  
596 2002;21(11):1539-58. Epub 2002/07/12. doi: 10.1002/sim.1186. PubMed PMID:  
597 12111919.
- 598 20. Moher D, Liberati A, Tetzlaff J, Altman DG, Group P. Preferred reporting items for  
599 systematic reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA statement. *PLoS medicine*.  
600 2009;6(7):e1000097. doi: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1000097. PubMed PMID: 19621072;  
601 PubMed Central PMCID: PMCPC2707599.
- 602 21. Wasserman S, Engel ME, Mendelson M. Burden of pneumocystis pneumonia in HIV-  
603 infected adults in sub-Saharan Africa: protocol for a systematic review. *Systematic*  
604 *reviews*. 2013;2:112. Epub 2013/12/18. doi: 10.1186/2046-4053-2-112. PubMed PMID:  
605 24330755; PubMed Central PMCID: PMCPC3866578.
- 606 22. Hoy D, Brooks P, Woolf A, Blyth F, March L, Bain C, et al. Assessing risk of bias in  
607 prevalence studies: modification of an existing tool and evidence of interrater agreement.  
608 *Journal of clinical epidemiology*. 2012;65(9):934-9. Epub 2012/06/30. doi:  
609 10.1016/j.jclinepi.2011.11.014. PubMed PMID: 22742910.
- 610 23. Voorhoeve AM, Muller AS, Schulpen TW, t' Mannetje W, van Rens M. Machakos project  
611 studies. Agents affecting health of mother and child in a rural area of Kenya. IV: The  
612 epidemiology of pertussis. *Trop Geogr Med*. 1978;30(1):125-39. Epub 1978/03/01.  
613 PubMed PMID: 675822.
- 614 24. Ramkissoon A, Coovadia HM, Loening WEK, Ndlovana M. Does whole-cell pertussis  
615 vaccine protect black South African infants? Assessment of post-vaccination events and  
616 antibody responses to pertussis toxin, filamentous haemagglutinin and agglutinogens 2  
617 and 3. *South African Medical Journal*. 1991;79(11):645-9.
- 618 25. Strebel P, Hussey G, Metcalf C, Smith D, Hanslo D, Simpson J. An outbreak of whooping



- 619 cough in a highly vaccinated urban community. *J Trop Pediatr.* 1991;37(2):71-6. Epub  
620 1991/03/01. PubMed PMID: 2027168.
- 621 26. Simondon F, Preziosi MP, Yam A, Kane CT, Chabirand L, Itean I, et al. A randomized  
622 double-blind trial comparing a two-component acellular to a whole-cell pertussis vaccine  
623 in Senegal. *Vaccine.* 1997;15(15):1606-12. doi: 10.1016/S0264-410X(97)00100-X.
- 624 27. Anukam KC, Osazuwa EE, Mbata TI, Ahonkhai IN. Increased incidence of pertussis and  
625 parapertussis in HIV-1-positive adolescents vaccinated previously with whole-cell  
626 pertussis vaccine. *World J Microbiol Biotechnol.* 2004;20(3):231-4. doi:  
627 10.1023/B:WIBI.0000023825.36332.f1. PubMed PMID: WOS:000221544200003.
- 628 28. Lassmann B, Poetschke M, Ninteretse B, Issifou S, Winkler S, Kremsner PG, et al.  
629 Community-acquired pneumonia in children in Lambarene, Gabon. *Am J Trop Med Hyg.*  
630 2008;79(1):109-14. Epub 2008/07/09. PubMed PMID: 18606773.
- 631 29. Jusot V, Aberrane S, Ale F, Laouali B, Moussa I, Alio SA, et al. Prevalence of *Bordetella*  
632 infection in a hospital setting in Niamey, Niger. *J Trop Pediatr.* 2014;60(3):223-30. Epub  
633 2014/02/18. doi: 10.1093/tropej/fmu001. PubMed PMID: 24531376.
- 634 30. Kayina V, Kyobe S, Katabazi FA, Kigozi E, Okee M, Odongkara B, et al. Pertussis  
635 prevalence and its determinants among children with persistent cough in urban Uganda.  
636 *PLoS One.* 2015;10(4):e0123240. Epub 2015/04/16. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0123240.  
637 PubMed PMID: 25874411; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC4398436.
- 638 31. Barger-Kamate B, Deloria Knoll M, Kagucia EW, Prospero C, Baggett HC, Brooks WA,  
639 et al. Pertussis-Associated Pneumonia in Infants and Children From Low- and Middle-  
640 Income Countries Participating in the PERCH Study. *Clinical infectious diseases : an*  
641 *official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.* 2016;63(suppl 4):S187-  
642 s96. Epub 2016/11/14. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciw546. PubMed PMID: 27838672; PubMed  
643 Central PMCID: PMC45106621.
- 644 32. Gill CJ, Mwananyanda L, MacLeod W, Kwenda G, Mwale M, Williams AL, et al.  
645 Incidence of Severe and Nonsevere Pertussis Among HIV-Exposed and -Unexposed  
646 Zambian Infants Through 14 Weeks of Age: Results From the Southern Africa Mother  
647 Infant Pertussis Study (SAMIPS), a Longitudinal Birth Cohort Study. *Clinical infectious*  
648 *diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.*  
649 2016;63(suppl 4):S154-s64. Epub 2016/11/14. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciw526. PubMed PMID:  
650 27838668; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC45106616.
- 651 33. Hallbauer UM, Joubert G, Goosen Y. Pertussis in children in Bloemfontein, South Africa:  
652 A 7-year retrospective review. *South African medical journal = Suid-Afrikaanse tydskrif*  
653 *vir geneeskunde.* 2016;106(10):1042-6. Epub 2016/10/12. doi:  
654 10.7196/SAMJ.2016.v106i10.10401. PubMed PMID: 27725026.
- 655 34. Muloiwa R, Dube FS, Nicol MP, Zar HJ, Hussey GD. Incidence and Diagnosis of  
656 Pertussis in South African Children Hospitalized With Lower Respiratory Tract Infection.  
657 *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* 2016;35(6):611-6. doi: 10.1097/INF.0000000000001132. PubMed  
658 PMID: 26967813.
- 659 35. Nunes MC, Downs S, Jones S, van Niekerk N, Cutland CL, Madhi SA. *Bordetella*  
660 pertussis Infection in South African HIV-Infected and HIV-Uninfected Mother-Infant  
661 Dyads: A Longitudinal Cohort Study. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication*  
662 *of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.* 2016;63(suppl 4):S174-s80. Epub  
663 2016/11/14. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciw527. PubMed PMID: 27838670; PubMed Central  
664 PMCID: PMC45106617.
- 665 36. Soofie N, Nunes MC, Kgagudi P, van Niekerk N, Makgobo T, Agosti Y, et al. The  
666 Burden of Pertussis Hospitalization in HIV-Exposed and HIV-Unexposed South African  
667 Infants. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases*  
668 *Society of America.* 2016;63(suppl 4):S165-s73. Epub 2016/11/14. doi:  
669 10.1093/cid/ciw545. PubMed PMID: 27838669; PubMed Central PMCID:  
670 PMC45106620.
- 671 37. Zar HJ, Barnett W, Stadler A, Gardner-Lubbe S, Myer L, Nicol MP. Aetiology of  
672 childhood pneumonia in a well vaccinated South African birth cohort: a nested case-  
673 control study of the Drakenstein Child Health Study. *The Lancet Respiratory medicine.*  
674 2016;4(6):463-72. Epub 2016/04/28. doi: 10.1016/s2213-2600(16)00096-5. PubMed

- 675 PMID: 27117547; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC4989125.
- 676 38. du Plessis NM, Ntshoe G, Reubenson G, Kularatne R, Blumberg L, Thomas J, et al. Risk  
677 factors for pertussis among hospitalized children in a high HIV prevalence setting, South  
678 Africa. *International Journal of Infectious Diseases*. 2018;68:54-60. doi:  
679 10.1016/j.ijid.2018.01.010.
- 680 39. Al-Bargish KA. Outbreak of pertussis in Basra, Iraq. *East Mediterr Health J*.  
681 1999;5(3):540-8. Epub 2000/05/04. PubMed PMID: 10793832.
- 682 40. Kakar RM, Mojadidi MK, Mofleh J. Pertussis in Afghanistan, 2007-2008. *Emerging  
683 infectious diseases*. 2009;15(3):501. Epub 2009/02/26. doi: 10.3201/eid1503.080982.  
684 PubMed PMID: 19239779; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC2681118.
- 685 41. Ghanaie RM, Karimi A, Sadeghi H, Esteghamti A, Falah F, Armin S, et al. Sensitivity and  
686 specificity of the World Health Organization pertussis clinical case definition. *Int J Infect  
687 Dis*. 2010;14(12):e1072-5. Epub 2010/10/19. doi: 10.1016/j.ijid.2010.07.005. PubMed  
688 PMID: 20951620.
- 689 42. Bokhari H, Said F, Syed MA, Mughal A, Kazi YF, Heuvelman K, et al. Whooping cough  
690 in Pakistan: *Bordetella pertussis* vs *Bordetella parapertussis* in 2005-2009. *Scandinavian  
691 journal of infectious diseases*. 2011;43(10):818-20. Epub 2011/05/14. doi:  
692 10.3109/00365548.2011.577804. PubMed PMID: 21563881.
- 693 43. Hajia M, Rahbar M, Fallah F, Safadel N. Detection of *Bordetella pertussis* in Infants  
694 Suspected to have Whooping Cough. *Open Respir Med J*. 2012;6:34-6. Epub 2012/07/04.  
695 doi: 10.2174/1874306401206010034. PubMed PMID: 22754598; PubMed Central  
696 PMCID: PMC3386500.
- 697 44. Mughal A, Kazi YF, Bukhari HA, Ali M. Pertussis resurgence among vaccinated children  
698 in Khairpur, Sindh, Pakistan. *Public Health*. 2012;126(6):518-22. Epub 2012/03/27. doi:  
699 10.1016/j.puhe.2012.02.001. PubMed PMID: 22445714.
- 700 45. Zouari A, Smaoui H, Brun D, Njamkepo E, Sghaier S, Zouari E, et al. Prevalence of  
701 *Bordetella pertussis* and *Bordetella parapertussis* infections in Tunisian hospitalized  
702 infants: results of a 4-year prospective study. *Diagnostic microbiology and infectious  
703 disease*. 2012;72(4):303-17.
- 704 46. Bahari M, Sadeghian I, Rezai M, Ghorbani G. Clinical manifestations of pertussis in  
705 pediatrics admitted to Sari Boalisina hospital, 2008-2012. *Journal of Mazandaran  
706 University of Medical Sciences*. 2013;23(101):2-9.
- 707 47. Nikbin VS, Shahcheraghi F, Lotfi MN, Zahraei SM, Parzadeh M. Comparison of culture  
708 and real-time PCR for detection of *Bordetella pertussis* isolated from patients in Iran.  
709 *Iranian Journal of Microbiology*. 2013;5(3):209-14.
- 710 48. Saffar MJ, Ghorbani G, Hashemi A, Rezai MS. Pertussis resurgence in a highly  
711 vaccinated population, Mazandaran, North of Iran 2008-2011: an epidemiological  
712 analysis. *Indian journal of pediatrics*. 2014;81(12):1332-6. Epub 2014/05/03. doi:  
713 10.1007/s12098-014-1445-0. PubMed PMID: 24788914.
- 714 49. Sedaghat M, Lotfi MN, Talebi M, Saifi M, Pourshafie MR. Status of pertussis in Iran.  
715 *Jundishapur journal of microbiology*. 2014;7(11). doi: 10.5812/jjm.12421.
- 716 50. Benamrouche N, Tali Maamar H, Lazri M, Hasnaoui S, Radoui A, Lafer O, et al. Pertussis  
717 in north-central and northwestern regions of Algeria. *Journal of infection in developing  
718 countries*. 2016;10(11):1191-9. Epub 2016/11/26. doi: 10.3855/jidc.7262. PubMed PMID:  
719 27886031.
- 720 51. Ghorbani GR, Zahraei SM, Moosazadeh M, Afshari M, Doosti F. Comparing Seasonal  
721 Pattern of Laboratory Confirmed Cases of Pertussis with Clinically Suspected Cases.  
722 *Osong Public Health Res Perspect*. 2016;7(2):131-7. Epub 2016/05/12. doi:  
723 10.1016/j.phrp.2016.02.004. PubMed PMID: 27169013; PubMed Central PMCID:  
724 PMC4850371.
- 725 52. Omer SB, Kazi AM, Bednarczyk RA, Allen KE, Quinn CP, Aziz F, et al. Epidemiology  
726 of Pertussis Among Young Pakistani Infants: A Community-Based Prospective  
727 Surveillance Study. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious  
728 Diseases Society of America*. 2016;63(suppl 4):S148-s53. Epub 2016/11/14. doi:  
729 10.1093/cid/ciw561. PubMed PMID: 27838667; PubMed Central PMCID:  
730 PMC4850371.

- 731 53. Katfy K, Guiso N, Diawara I, Zerouali K, Slaoui B, Jouhadi Z, et al. Epidemiology of  
732 pertussis in Casablanca (Morocco): contribution of conventional and molecular diagnosis  
733 tools. *BMC infectious diseases*. 2017;17(1):348. Epub 2017/05/18. doi: 10.1186/s12879-  
734 017-2452-3. PubMed PMID: 28511667; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC5434547.
- 735 54. Ben Fraj I, Kechrid A, Guillot S, Bouchez V, Brisse S, Guiso N, et al. Pertussis  
736 epidemiology in Tunisian infants and children and characterization of *Bordetella pertussis*  
737 isolates: results of a 9-year surveillance study, 2007 to 2016. *Journal of medical*  
738 *microbiology*. 2018. Epub 2018/12/12. doi: 10.1099/jmm.0.000892. PubMed PMID:  
739 30526740.
- 740 55. Dumaidi K, Al-Jawabreh A. The prevalence of PCR-confirmed pertussis cases in  
741 Palestine from archived nasopharyngeal samples. *Archives of Iranian Medicine*.  
742 2018;21(5):208-12.
- 743 56. Mohammadzadeh Asl Y, Akhi MT, Soroush MH, Sefidan FY, Mousapour J, Hejazi ME,  
744 et al. Clinical Manifestations and Seasonality of Pertussis in Azerbaijan, Iran. *Infectious*  
745 *Diseases in Clinical Practice*. 2018;26(3):145-9. doi: 10.1097/IPC.0000000000000589.
- 746 57. Lukić-Grlić A, Baće A, Lokar-Kolbas R, Loffler-Badžek D, Draženović V, Božikov J, et  
747 al. Clinical and epidemiological aspects of respiratory syncytial virus lower respiratory  
748 tract infections. *European journal of epidemiology*. 1999;15(4):361-5.
- 749 58. Dağlar E, Nar S, Tanir G, Akbaş E, Zorlu P, Esen B. Approach to the diagnosis of  
750 pertussis infection: Evaluation of cases suffering from prolonged cough symptoms.  
751 *Mikrobiyoloji Bulteni*. 2004;38(4):393-408.
- 752 59. Aksakal FN, Çöplü N, Ceyhan MN, Sönmez C, Özkan S, Esen B, et al. High incidence of  
753 pertussis among schoolchildren with prolonged cough in Turkey. *Tohoku Journal of*  
754 *Experimental Medicine*. 2007;211(4):353-8. doi: 10.1620/tjem.211.353.
- 755 60. Yıldırım I, Ceyhan M, Kalayci O, Cengiz AB, Secmeer G, Gur D, et al. Frequency fo  
756 pertussis in children with prolonged cough. *Scandinavian journal of infectious diseases*.  
757 2008;40(4):314-9. doi: 10.1080/00365540701689659.
- 758 61. Medkova AY, Alyapkina YS, Sinyashina LN, Amelina IP, Alekseev YI, Bokovoi AG, et  
759 al. Detection of Avirulent Insertional *Bordetella pertussis* bvg(-) Mutants in Patients with  
760 Pertussis and with Upper Respiratory Tract Infection and in Seemingly Healthy People.  
761 *Mol Genet Microbiol Virol*. 2010;25(4):167-71. doi: 10.3103/S0891416810040051.  
762 PubMed PMID: WOS:000288430100005.
- 763 62. Gürsel D, Asian A, Sönmez C, Koturoğlu G, Çöplü N, Kurugöl Z, et al. Detection of  
764 *Bordetella pertussis* infection by culture, real-time polymerase chain reaction and  
765 serologic tests among children with prolonged cough. *Mikrobiyoloji Bulteni*.  
766 2012;46(2):211-24.
- 767 63. Karlı A, Şensoy G, Belet N, Yener N, Akgün M, Paksu MŞ. Clinical features and  
768 prognosis of infants hospitalized with pertussis. *Cocuk Enfeksiyon Dergisi*. 2013;7(2):47-  
769 52. doi: 10.5152/ced.2013.14.
- 770 64. Uslu ZDT, Ceyhan M, Dinleyici EC, Kurugol Z, Alpman BN, Oncel EK, et al. Detection  
771 of the presence of *Bordetella pertussis* by real-time polymerase chain reaction in children  
772 diagnosed with pertussis and among their household contacts. *Journal of Vaccines and*  
773 *Vaccination*. 2013;4(6). doi: 10.4172/2157-7560.1000199.
- 774 65. Dinu S, Guillot S, Dragomirescu CC, Brun D, Lazar S, Vancea G, et al. Whooping cough  
775 in South-East Romania: a 1-year study. *Diagnostic microbiology and infectious disease*.  
776 2014;78(3):302-6. doi: 10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2013.09.017. PubMed PMID:  
777 WOS:000332056500020.
- 778 66. Karagul A, Ogunc D, Midilli K, Ongut G, Ozhak Baysan B, Donmez L, et al.  
779 Epidemiology of pertussis in adolescents and adults in Turkey. *Epidemiology and*  
780 *infection*. 2014:1-6. Epub 2014/12/20. doi: 10.1017/s0950268814003483. PubMed PMID:  
781 25524454.
- 782 67. Öksüz L, Hançerli S, Somer A, Salman N, Gürler N. Pertussis in children in the İstanbul  
783 Faculty Of Medicine: Results for four years. *Turk J Pediatr*. 2014;56(6):632-7.
- 784 68. Aslan A, Kurugöl Z, Aydemir S, Gürsel D, Koturoğlu G. High frequency of pertussis in  
785 older children and adolescents with prolonged cough in Turkey. *The Turkish journal of*  
786 *pediatrics*. 2016;58(1):41-6. Epub 2016/12/07. PubMed PMID: 27922235.

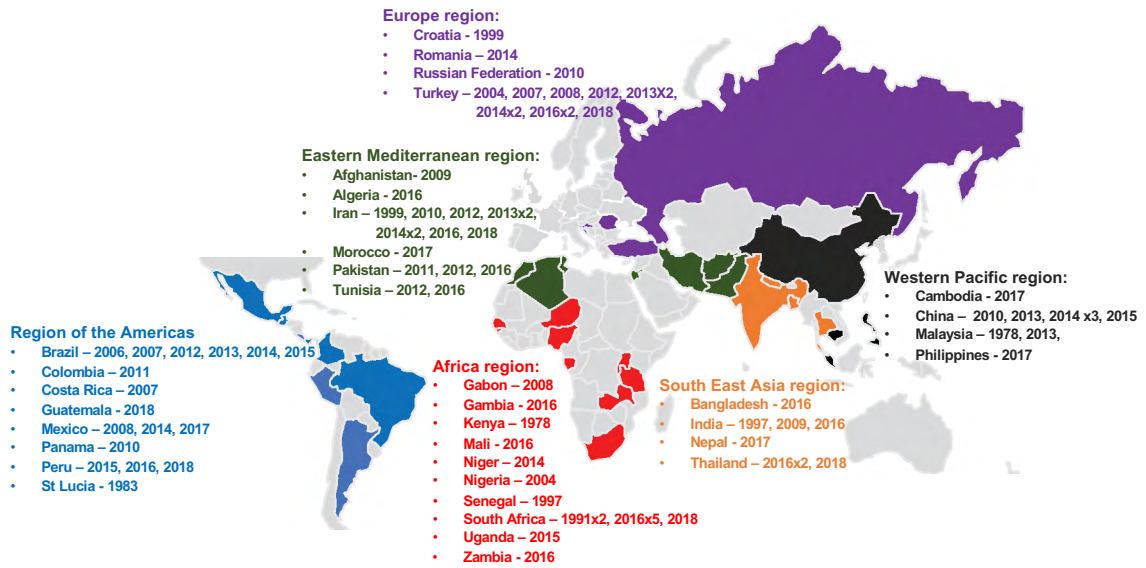
- 787 69. Goktas S, Sirin MC. Prevalence and Seasonal Distribution of Respiratory Viruses During  
788 the 2014 - 2015 Season in Istanbul. *Jundishapur journal of microbiology*.  
789 2016;9(9):e39132. Epub 2016/11/02. doi: 10.5812/jjm.39132. PubMed PMID: 27800148;  
790 PubMed Central PMCID: PMC5086027.
- 791 70. Gökçe S, Kurugöl Z, Şöhret Aydemir S, Çiçek C, Aslan A, Koturoğlu G. Bordetella  
792 Pertussis Infection in Hospitalized Infants with Acute Bronchiolitis. *Indian journal of*  
793 *pediatrics*. 2018;85(3):189-93. Epub 2017/10/28. doi: 10.1007/s12098-017-2480-4.  
794 PubMed PMID: 29076101.
- 795 71. Singh MP, Srivastava VK, Agarwal SK. Pertussis in rural children. *Indian Pediatr*.  
796 1987;24(7):553-6. Epub 1987/07/01. PubMed PMID: 3500917.
- 797 72. Dahiya S, Kapil A, Kabra SK, Mathur P, Sood S, Lodha R, et al. Pertussis in India. *J Med*  
798 *Microbiol*. 2009;58(Pt 5):688-9. Epub 2009/04/17. doi: 10.1099/jmm.0.47847-0. PubMed  
799 PMID: 19369535.
- 800 73. Das A, Patgiri SJ, Saikia L, Dowerah P, Nath R. Bacterial pathogens associated with  
801 community-acquired pneumonia in children aged below five years. 2016;- 53(- 3):- 227.
- 802 74. Siriyakorn N, Leethong P, Tantawichien T, Sripakdee S, Kerdsin A, Dejsirilert S, et al.  
803 Adult pertussis is unrecognized public health problem in Thailand. *BMC infectious*  
804 *diseases*. 2016;16:25. Epub 2016/01/27. doi: 10.1186/s12879-016-1357-x. PubMed  
805 PMID: 26809648; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC4727280.
- 806 75. Hughes MM, Englund JA, Kuypers J, Tielsch JM, Khatry SK, Shrestha L, et al.  
807 Population-Based Pertussis Incidence and Risk Factors in Infants Less Than 6 Months in  
808 Nepal. *Journal of the Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society*. 2017;6(1):33-9. Epub  
809 2017/01/12. doi: 10.1093/jpids/piw079. PubMed PMID: 28073985.
- 810 76. Chinthanate S, Wanlapakorn N, Puenpa J, Wongthong D, Poovorawan Y. Pertussis in thai  
811 adult and pediatric patients presenting with prolonged acute cough. *Southeast Asian*  
812 *Journal of Tropical Medicine and Public Health*. 2018;49(3):447-55.
- 813 77. Cooper E, Fitch L. Pertussis: herd immunity and vaccination coverage in St Lucia. *Lancet*.  
814 1983;2(8359):1129-32. Epub 1983/11/12. PubMed PMID: 6138654.
- 815 78. Baptista PN, Magalhães V, Rodrigues LC, Rocha MW, Pimentel AM. Pertussis vaccine  
816 effectiveness in reducing clinical disease, transmissibility and proportion of cases with a  
817 positive culture after household exposure in Brazil. *Pediatric Infectious Disease Journal*.  
818 2006;25(9):844-6. doi: 10.1097/01.inf.0000232642.25495.95.
- 819 79. Sandoval PT, Arreola LDT, Quechol GR, Gallardo HG. Bordetella pertussis in  
820 adolescents students in Mexico City. *Revista de saude publica*. 2008;42(4):679-83.  
821 PubMed PMID: WOS:000259193400014.
- 822 80. Nieto Guevara J, Luciani K, Montesdeoca Melián A, Mateos Durán M, Estripeaut D.  
823 Hospital admissions due to whooping cough: Experience of the del niño Hospital in  
824 Panama. Period 2001 - 2008. *An Pediatr*. 2010;72(3):165-71. doi:  
825 10.1016/j.anpedi.2009.10.021.
- 826 81. Astudillo M, Estrada VE, de Soto MF, Moreno LA. Bordetella pertussis infection in  
827 household contacts of cases of pertussis in the southeast zone of the city of Cali, Colombia,  
828 2006-2007. *Colombia Medica*. 2011;42(2):184-90.
- 829 82. Leite D, Cassiday PK, Tatti KM, Vaz TMI, Tondella ML. Serotypes and genetic profiles  
830 of Bordetella pertussis strains isolated in the city of São Paulo, 2006-2008. *Jornal de*  
831 *Pediatria*. 2012;88(4):357-60. doi: 10.2223/JPED.2186.
- 832 83. Ferronato AE, Gilio AE, Vieira SE. Respiratory viral infections in infants with clinically  
833 suspected pertussis. *J Pediatr (Rio J)*. 2013;89(6):549-53. Epub 2013/09/17. doi:  
834 10.1016/j.jpmed.2013.05.004. PubMed PMID: 24035869.
- 835 84. Ochoa-Perez UR, Hernández-Sierra JF, Escalante-Padrón FJ, Contreras-Vidales S,  
836 Berman-Puente AM, Hernandez-Maldonado F, et al. Epidemiology of bordetella pertussis  
837 in San Luis potosí, Mexico. *Pediatric Infectious Disease Journal*. 2014;33(5):540-2. doi:  
838 10.1097/INF.0000000000000205.
- 839 85. Vaz-de-Lima LRA, Martin MD, Pawloski LC, Leite D, Rocha KCP, De Brito CA, et al.  
840 Serodiagnosis as adjunct assay for pertussis infection in São Paulo, Brazil. *Clinical and*  
841 *Vaccine Immunology*. 2014;21(5):636-40. doi: 10.1128/CFI.00760-13.
- 842 86. Castillo ME, Bada C, Del Aguila O, Petrozzi-Helasvuo V, Casabona-Ore V, Reyes I, et al.

- 843 Detection of *Bordetella pertussis* using a PCR test in infants younger than one year old  
844 hospitalized with whooping cough in five Peruvian hospitals. *International journal of*  
845 *infectious diseases : IJID : official publication of the International Society for Infectious*  
846 *Diseases.* 2015;41:36-41. Epub 2015/11/03. doi: 10.1016/j.ijid.2015.10.020. PubMed  
847 PMID: 26523641.
- 848 87. Pavic-Espinoza I, Bendezu-Medina S, Herrera-Alzamora A, Weigl P, Pons MJ, Aguilar-  
849 Luis MA, et al. High prevalence of *Bordetella pertussis* in children under 5 years old  
850 hospitalized with acute respiratory infections in Lima, Peru. *BMC infectious diseases.*  
851 2015;15:554. Epub 2015/12/03. doi: 10.1186/s12879-015-1287-z. PubMed PMID:  
852 26626910; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC4667485.
- 853 88. Pimentel AM, Baptista PN, Ximenes RA, Rodrigues LC, Magalhaes V, Silva AR, et al.  
854 Pertussis may be the cause of prolonged cough in adolescents and adults in the  
855 interepidemic period. *The Brazilian journal of infectious diseases : an official publication*  
856 *of the Brazilian Society of Infectious Diseases.* 2015;19(1):43-6. Epub 2014/12/03. doi:  
857 10.1016/j.bjid.2014.09.001. PubMed PMID: 25452019.
- 858 89. Del Valle-Mendoza J, Casabona-Ore V, Petrozzi-Helasvuo V, Cornejo-Tapia A, Weigl P,  
859 Pons MJ, et al. *Bordetella pertussis* diagnosis in children under five years of age in the  
860 Regional Hospital of Cajamarca, Northern Peru. *Journal of infection in developing*  
861 *countries.* 2015;9(11):1180-5. Epub 2015/12/02. doi: 10.3855/jidc.6803. PubMed PMID:  
862 26623626.
- 863 90. Bailon H, León-Janampa N, Padilla C, Hozbor D. Increase in pertussis cases along with  
864 high prevalence of two emerging genotypes of *Bordetella pertussis* in Perú, 2012. *BMC*  
865 *infectious diseases.* 2016;16(1). doi: 10.1186/s12879-016-1700-2.
- 866 91. Aquino-Andrade A, Martinez-Leyva G, Merida-Vieyra J, Saltigeral P, Lara A,  
867 Dominguez W, et al. Real-Time Polymerase Chain Reaction-Based Detection of  
868 *Bordetella pertussis* in Mexican Infants and Their Contacts: A 3-Year Multicenter Study.  
869 *The Journal of pediatrics.* 2017;188:217-23.e1. Epub 2017/06/18. doi:  
870 10.1016/j.jpeds.2017.05.032. PubMed PMID: 28622957.
- 871 92. Phadke VK, McCracken JP, Kriss JL, Lopez MR, Lindblade KA, Bryan JP, et al. Clinical  
872 Characteristics of Hospitalized Infants With Laboratory-Confirmed Pertussis in  
873 Guatemala. *J Pediatric Infect Dis Soc.* 2018;7(4):310-6. Epub 2017/10/19. doi:  
874 10.1093/jpids/pix081. PubMed PMID: 29045690; PubMed Central PMCID:  
875 PMC45899054.
- 876 93. Del Valle-Mendoza J, Silva-Caso W, Aguilar-Luis MA, Del Valle-Vargas C, Cieza-Mora  
877 E, Martins-Luna J, et al. *Bordetella pertussis* in children hospitalized with a respiratory  
878 infection: Clinical characteristics and pathogen detection in household contacts. *BMC*  
879 *Research Notes.* 2018;11(1). doi: 10.1186/s13104-018-3405-7.
- 880 94. Ong SB, Thong ML, Tay LK. Viruses and bacteria associated with acute respiratory  
881 illnesses in young children in general practice. *Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health.*  
882 1978;9(1):98-102.
- 883 95. Lin L PK, Lim TK. . Multicenter clinical investigation of pertussis in children and  
884 adolescents with persistent cough. *Zhonghua Er Ke Za Zhi.* 2010;48(10):748-52. Epub  
885 2010/12/24. PubMed PMID: 21176482.
- 886 96. Mi R, Fu J, Wang XY, Kang LM, Li L, Xu FS, et al. Clinical research of *Bordetella*  
887 *pertussis* infection in infants with prolonged cough. *Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi.*  
888 2013;93(22):1721-5. Epub 2013/10/16. PubMed PMID: 24124679.
- 889 97. Ting TX, Hashim R, Ahmad N, Abdullah KH. Detection of *Bordetella pertussis* from  
890 Clinical Samples by Culture and End-Point PCR in Malaysian Patients. *International*  
891 *journal of bacteriology.* 2013;2013:324136. Epub 2013/01/01. doi: 10.1155/2013/324136.  
892 PubMed PMID: 26904725; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC4745474.
- 893 98. Huang H, Liu Y, Gao Z, Liu P, Li Y, Zhang Y, et al. A sero-epidemiological study on  
894 pertussis among the community-based populations in Tianjin during 2010-2012.  
895 *Zhonghua liu xing bing xue za zhi = Zhonghua liuxingbingxue zazhi.* 2014;35(12):1354-7.  
896 Epub 2015/01/28. PubMed PMID: 25623453.
- 897 99. Liu Y, Huang H, Liu P, Su X, Gao Z, Guo L, et al. The status of pertussis infection and  
898 molecular epidemiological characteristics of pertussis in Tianjin, 2013. *Zhonghua Liu*

- 899 Xing Bing Xue Za Zhi. 2014;35(12):1358-61. Epub 2015/01/28. PubMed PMID:  
900 25623454.
- 901 100. Wang Z, Cui Z, Li Y, Hou T, Liu X, Xi Y, et al. High prevalence of erythromycin-  
902 resistant *Bordetella pertussis* in Xi'an, China. *Clin Microbiol Infect*. 2014;20(11):O825-  
903 30. Epub 2014/05/13. doi: 10.1111/1469-0691.12671. PubMed PMID: 24816168.
- 904 101. Hu Y, Liu Q. Clinical analysis of 247 children with whooping cough and the risk factors  
905 of severe cases. *Zhonghua er ke za zhi = Chinese journal of pediatrics*. 2015;53(9):684-9.  
906 Epub 2016/01/14. PubMed PMID: 26757969.
- 907 102. Moriuchi T, Vichit O, Vutthikol Y, Hossain MS, Samnang C, Toda K, et al. Molecular  
908 epidemiology of *Bordetella pertussis* in Cambodia determined by direct genotyping of  
909 clinical specimens. *International journal of infectious diseases : IJID : official publication*  
910 *of the International Society for Infectious Diseases*. 2017;62:56-8. Epub 2017/07/29. doi:  
911 10.1016/j.ijid.2017.07.015. PubMed PMID: 28751008.
- 912 103. Sadiasa A, Saito-Obata M, Dapat C, Saito M, Frederick Quicho R, Perez M, et al.  
913 *Bordetella pertussis* infection in children with severe pneumonia, Philippines, 2012–2015.  
914 *Vaccine*. 2017;35(7):993-6. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2016.11.087.
- 915 104. Giayetto VO, Blanco S, Mangeaud A, Barbás MG, Cudolá A, Gallego SV. Features of  
916 *Bordetella pertussis*, *Bordetella* spp. infection and whooping cough in Córdoba province,  
917 Argentina. *Rev Chil Infectol*. 2017;34(2):108-15.
- 918 105. Heininger U, Weibel D, Richard JL. Prospective nationwide surveillance of  
919 hospitalizations due to pertussis in children, 2006-2010. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*.  
920 2014;33(2):147-51. Epub 2014/01/15. doi: 10.1097/01.inf.0000435503.44620.74. PubMed  
921 PMID: 24413406.
- 922 106. Chow MY, Khandaker G, McIntyre P. Global Childhood Deaths From Pertussis: A  
923 Historical Review. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious*  
924 *Diseases Society of America*. 2016;63(suppl 4):S134-S41. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciw529.  
925 PubMed PMID: 27838665; PubMed Central PMCID: PMC5106618.
- 926 107. Macdonald-Laurs E, Ganeshalingham A, Lillie J, McSharry B, Segedin ER, Best E, et al.  
927 Increasing Incidence of Life-threatening Pertussis: A Retrospective Cohort Study in New  
928 Zealand. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2017;36(3):282-9. doi: 10.1097/INF.0000000000001441.  
929 PubMed PMID: 27902649.
- 930 108. Tan T, Dalby T, Forsyth K, Halperin SA, Heininger U, Hozbor D, et al. Pertussis Across  
931 the Globe: Recent Epidemiologic Trends From 2000-2013. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2015. doi:  
932 10.1097/INF.0000000000000795. PubMed PMID: 26083589.
- 933 109. Quinn HE, McIntyre PB. Pertussis epidemiology in Australia over the decade 1995-2005--  
934 trends by region and age group. *Commun Dis Intell Q Rep*. 2007;31(2):205-15. Epub  
935 2007/08/30. PubMed PMID: 17724997.
- 936 110. Wylks CE, Ewald B, Guest C. The epidemiology of pertussis in the Australian Capital  
937 Territory, 1999 to 2005--epidemics of testing, disease or false positives? *Commun Dis*  
938 *Intell Q Rep*. 2007;31(4):383-91. Epub 2008/02/14. PubMed PMID: 18268879.
- 939 111. World Health Organization. WHO-recommended surveillance standard of pertussis [11  
940 July 2019]. Available from:  
941 [http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring\\_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance\\_type/  
942 passive/pertussis\\_standards/en/](http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance_type/passive/pertussis_standards/en/).
- 943 112. Mills KH. Immunity to *Bordetella pertussis*. *Microbes and infection / Institut Pasteur*.  
944 2001;3(8):655-77. Epub 2001/07/11. PubMed PMID: 11445452.
- 945 113. Gentile A, Juarez MDV, Lucion MF, Martinez AC, Romanin V, Areso S, et al. *Bordetella*  
946 *pertussis* (Bp) disease: Before (2003-2011) and after (2013-2016) maternal immunization  
947 strategy in a pediatric hospital. *Vaccine*. 2018;36(11):1375-80. Epub 2018/02/13. doi:  
948 10.1016/j.vaccine.2018.01.091. PubMed PMID: 29429812.
- 949  
950  
951  
952

1 **Additional Files**

2

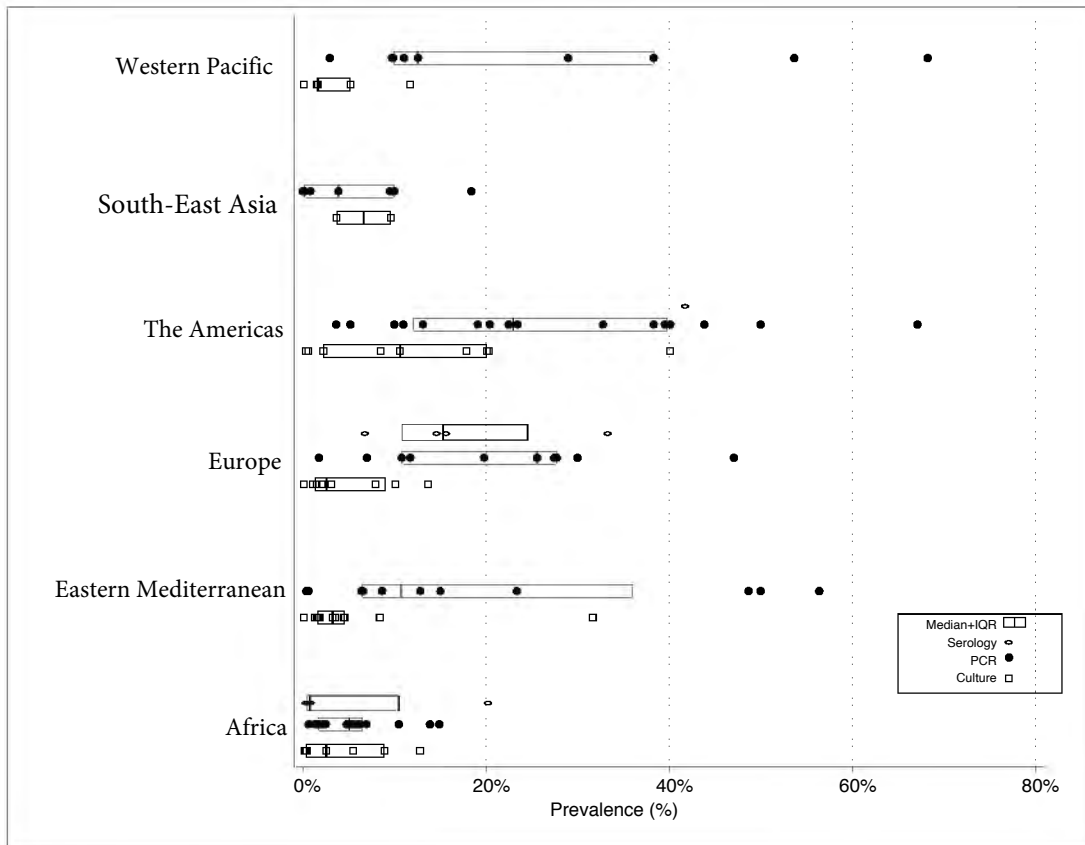


3

4 **Additional file 1:** Country and year of included studies with confirmed pertussis shown  
 5 by World Health Organization region

6

7



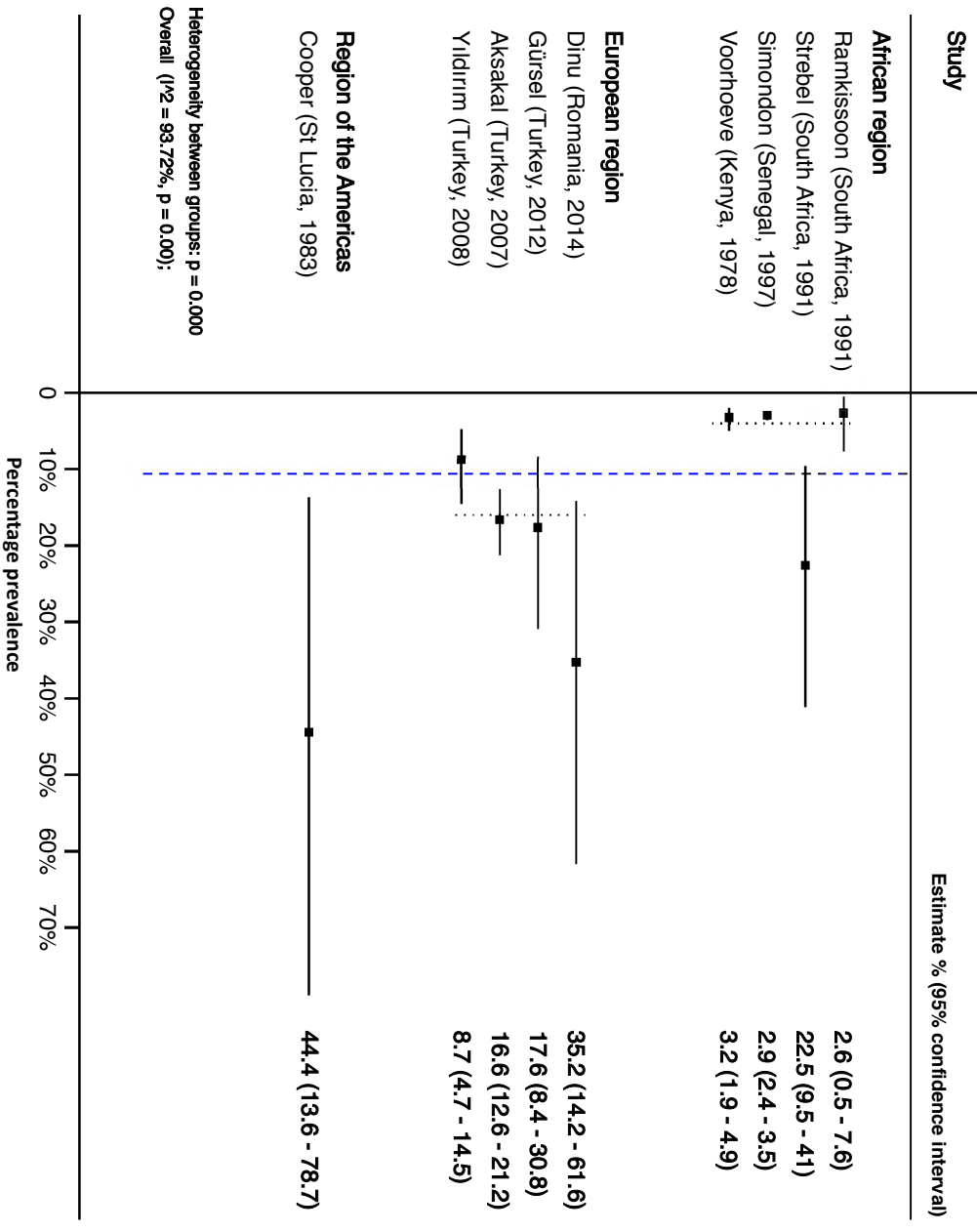
8

9 **Additional file 2:** Distribution of point prevalence of confirmed pertussis by World  
 10 Health Organization region and confirmation method [PCR = polymerase chain reaction]

11

12

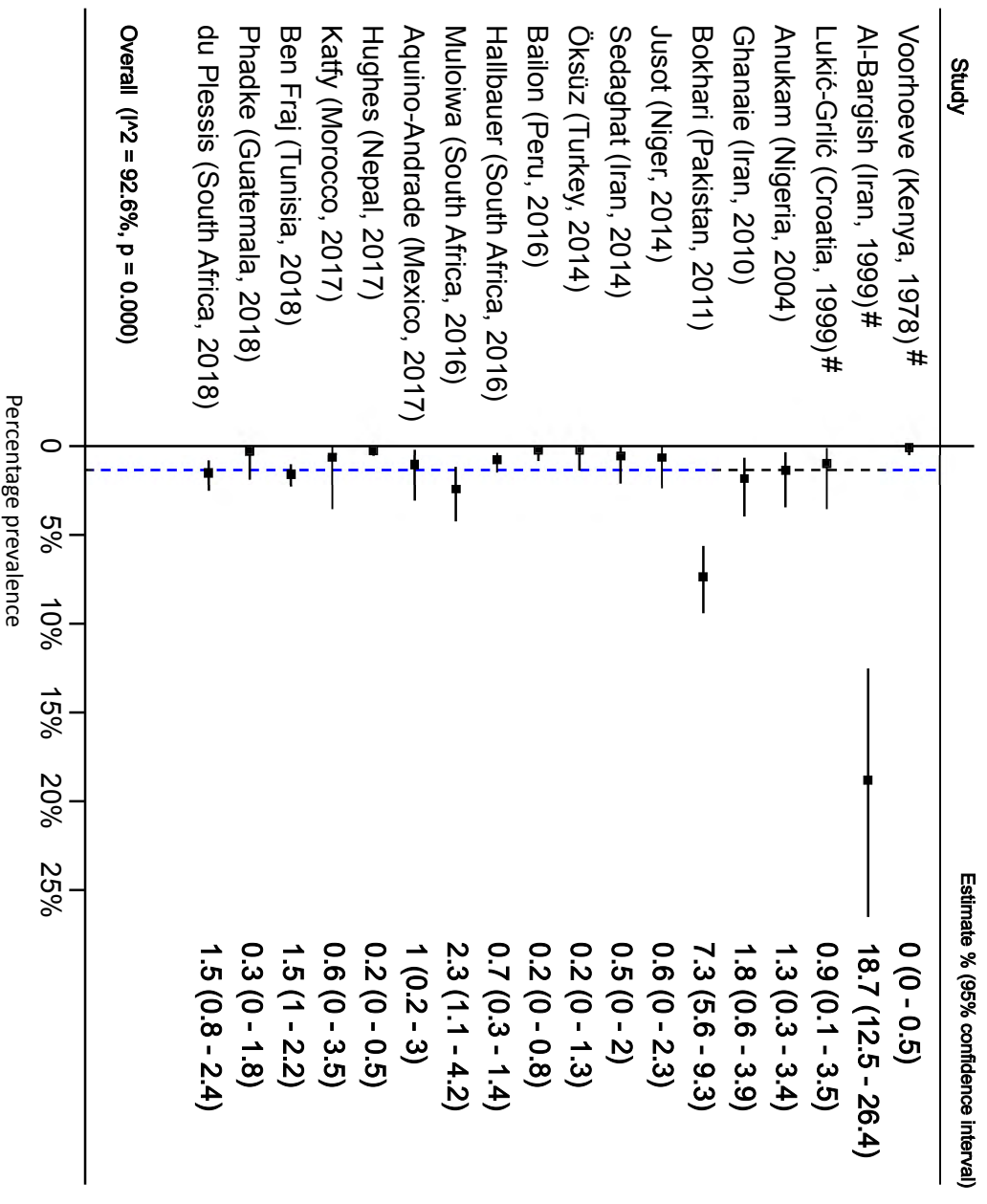
13



15  
16  
17  
18

**Additional file 3:** Prevalence of paired serology confirmed *Bordetella pertussis*. Dotted lines show subgroup and whole group average estimates



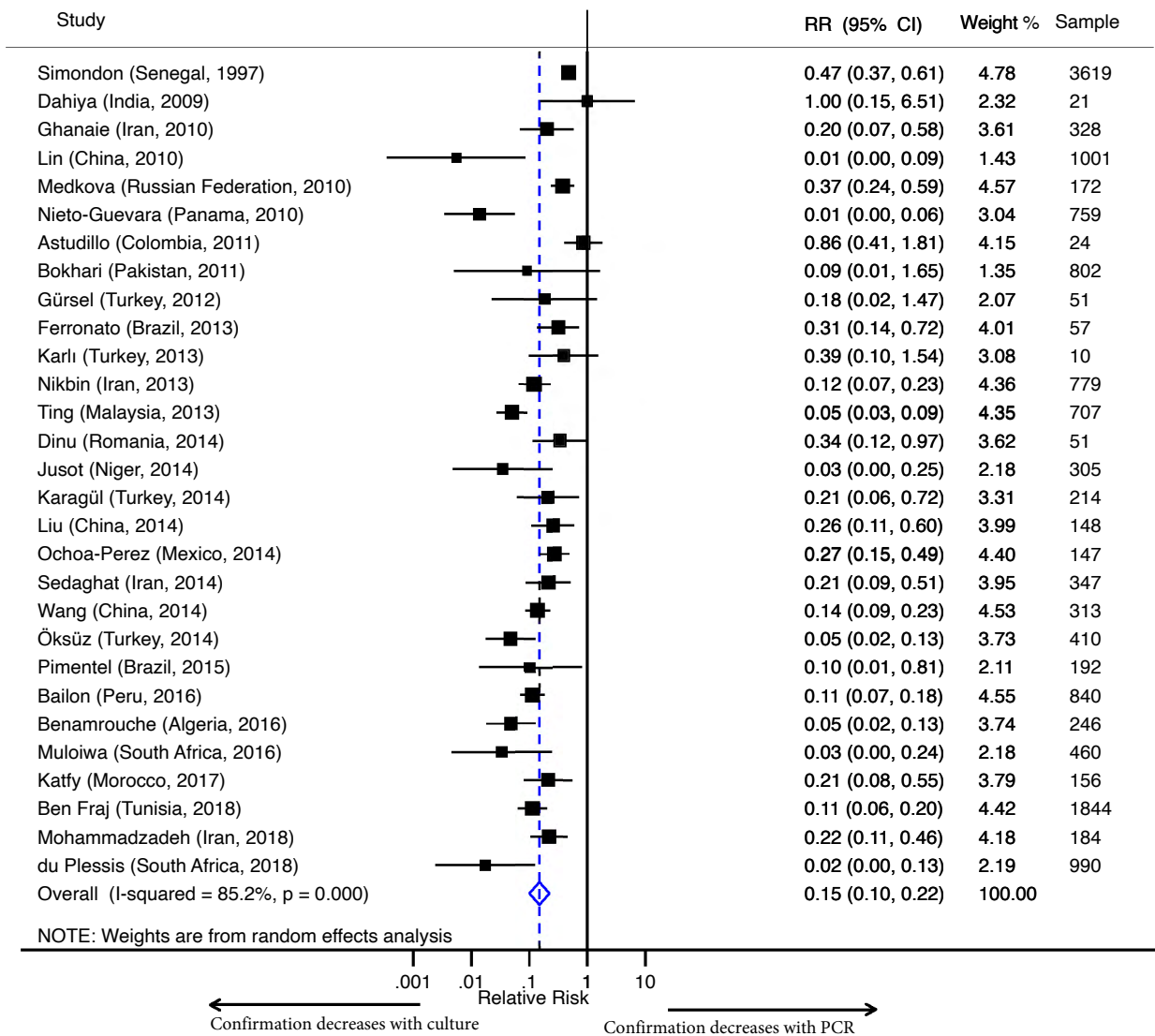


19

20 **Additional file 4:** Prevalence of polymerase chain reaction and culture confirmed

21

22 *Bordetella parapertussis*. Dotted line shows group average estimate [# Culture confirmed]



23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28

**Additional file 5:** Meta-analysis of relative detection rates of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and culture in confirming *Bordetella pertussis* infection

## Chapter 3

### 1 **Incidence and diagnosis of pertussis in South African children hospitalised with** 2 **lower respiratory tract infection**

3

4 Rudzani Muloiwa, MD<sup>1</sup>, Felix S. Dube, MSc.<sup>2</sup>, Mark P. Nicol, MD<sup>2,3,5</sup>, Heather J. Zar, MD  
5 <sup>3,5\*</sup>, Gregory D Hussey, MD<sup>4,5\*</sup>

6

#### 7 **Affiliations:**

8 <sup>1</sup>Department of Paediatrics and Child Health, Red Cross War Memorial Children's  
9 Hospital, and MRC unit on Child & Adolescent Lung Health, University of Cape Town,  
10 Cape Town, South Africa

11 <sup>2</sup>Division of Medical Microbiology, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Cape Town,  
12 South Africa

13 <sup>3</sup>National Health Laboratory Service, Groote Schuur Hospital, Cape Town, South Africa

14 <sup>4</sup>Vaccines for Africa Initiative, Division of Medical Microbiology, University of Cape  
15 Town, South Africa

16 <sup>5</sup>Infectious Disease and Molecular Medicine, University of Cape Town, South Africa

17

#### 18 **Keywords:**

19 *Bordetella pertussis*, *Bordetella parapertussis*, pertussis, respiratory infection, induced  
20 sputum

21

22 **Correspondence:** Rudzani Muloiwa, Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Red  
23 Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital, Klipfontein Road, Rondebosch, South Africa,  
24 7700. Tel: +27 21 658 5445, Fax: +27 21 689 1257, E-mail: Rudzani.Muloiwa@uct.ac.za

25 \* Joint Senior Author

26

27 **Disclosures:**

28

29 The authors acknowledge financial support to their institution by Sanofi Pasteur for the  
30 submitted work and the Hamilton Naki Clinical Scholarship awarded to Rudzani  
31 Muloiwa. The authors have no other conflicts of interest or funding to disclose.

32

33 **Cover title:**

34 Pertussis in hospitalised South African children

35 **Heading title:**

36 Pertussis in hospitalised South African children

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53 **Abstract**

54

55 **Background:** The incidence of pertussis in children in low and middle-income  
56 countries is poorly described. This study aimed to prospectively investigate the incidence  
57 of pertussis in South African children hospitalised with lower respiratory tract infection  
58 (LRTI).

59

60 **Methods:** Children hospitalised with LRTI in Cape Town, South Africa were enrolled  
61 over one year. Clinical data were collected. A nasopharyngeal swab (NP) and induced  
62 sputum (IS) were taken and PCR specific for *Bordetella pertussis* (IS481+/hIS1001-)  
63 and *Bordetella parapertussis* (IS1001+) was performed.

64

65 **Results:** 460 children with median age 8 (IQR 4-18) months were studied. *Bordetella*  
66 *pertussis* was detected in 17 (3.7%) while total *Bordetella spp.* were identified on 23  
67 (5.0 %) of 460 NP. Adding IS testing increased the identification of *B. pertussis* to  
68 32/460 cases (7.0%; 95% CI 4.8-9.7%); p=0.028 and total *Bordetella* to 41/460 (8.9%;  
69 95% CI 4-10%); p=0.020. Shorter duration of symptoms [median 2 (IQR 2-3) days  
70 versus 5 (IQR 3-7) days; p=0.0008] was associated with detection of *B. pertussis* on IS  
71 versus NP.

72

73 *B. pertussis* was detected in 15.8% (n=3/19) of HIV infected children, 10.9%  
74 (n=10/92) of HIV exposed uninfected and 5.4% (n=19/349) of HIV unexposed  
75 uninfected children. Risk of *B. pertussis* decreased with each additional dose of DTaP  
76 vaccine [0 doses = 17.9%; 1 dose =7.0%; 2 doses =6.9%; >3 doses =6.2%].

77

78 **Conclusions:** Pertussis is common in South African children hospitalised with LRTI  
79 particularly if HIV exposed or infected but decreases sequentially with vaccination  
80 doses. PCR on IS specimen provides confirmation earlier than NP while increasing overall  
81 diagnostic yield.

82

83

84

85 **Introduction**

86

87 Pertussis is an important cause of severe respiratory disease in children globally. Most  
88 cases are due to *Bordetella pertussis* infection with a small percentage attributed to  
89 *Bordetella parapertussis*. [1] The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that  
90 between 20 and 40 million cases of pertussis and 300 000 pertussis-related deaths occur  
91 around the world each year, 90% of which occur in children in low and middle-income  
92 countries (LMICs). [2, 3] Data are largely unavailable in LMICs, making it difficult to  
93 assess the true burden of disease and the impact of vaccination. [4, 5]

94

95 Pertussis can be difficult to diagnose clinically, especially in infants. [6] Polymerase  
96 chain reaction (PCR), commonly performed on a nasopharyngeal specimen obtained by  
97 swab or aspiration, has greatly improved the ability to confirm cases. [7, 8] [9, 10] Due  
98 to lack of resources for laboratory confirmation in most LMICs, diagnosis is largely  
99 made on clinical grounds utilizing clinical case definitions such as the one  
100 recommended by WHO. [5, 11, 12]

101

102 Since 2009, South Africa (SA) has introduced an acellular vaccine in a combination  
103 formulation with four other vaccines (DTaP-IPV/HIB; Pentaxim®, Sanofi  
104 Pasteur). [13]. Available data indicates that coverage for the pertussis vaccine in the  
105 Western Cape Province, where this study was done, declines from six weeks with each  
106 extra dose in the schedule. [14]

107 This study aimed to prospectively investigate the incidence and risk factors for pertussis  
108 in South African children hospitalised with lower respiratory tract infection (LRTI).

109

110

111 **Materials and Methods**

112

113 A prospective study of the incidence and risk factors for pertussis was performed in  
114 children hospitalised with LRTI.

115

116 Participants

117 Sequential children admitted to Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital (RCH),  
118 Cape Town, South Africa, from 07 September 2012 to 06 September 2013 for LRTI  
119 were eligible for enrolment. To be included, the children had to be less than 13 years of  
120 age and have WHO-defined age-specific tachypnoea or lower chest indrawing or apnoea.  
121 In addition, the children could only be enrolled after informed consent was obtained from  
122 the parents for the children to be included. Participants were excluded if they had a  
123 previous admission to a health care facility in the preceding two weeks or if they had  
124 already been in hospital longer than 48 hours during the current admission. A maximum  
125 of four children were enrolled per working day to ensure distribution of enrolment  
126 throughout the year. The attending doctors at RCH provided clinical care. Children  
127 were followed up until they were discharged from hospital.

128

129 A detailed history and clinical examination was done, especially noting the presence of  
130 cough, apnoea, duration of symptoms and use of antibiotics prior to admission. History of  
131 HIV exposure, infection and where relevant, antiretroviral treatment (ART) were  
132 recorded. Maternal HIV status at the time of pregnancy with the child was abstracted as  
133 recorded on the Road to Health Card (RTHC). In addition, caregivers who did not know  
134 their current HIV status were counselled and offered HIV testing. All children were  
135 screened for HIV infection during the study. Information on immunisation was abstracted  
136 from the RTHC, a standardised national record for each child, and the date and type of

137 each vaccine recorded. Vaccination status was regarded as a completed primary  
138 schedule if three or more doses were received. The status was classified unknown  
139 where RTHC was missing and up to date for age if an appropriate number of doses for  
140 the child's age were received.

141

142 HIV screening was done using an ELISA test (Architect HIV Ag/Ab Combo, Abbott  
143 Diagnostics, Wiesbaden). Children younger than 18 months who were ELISA positive  
144 had their status confirmed with an HIV PCR test (COBAS AmpliPrep/COBAS Taqman  
145 HIV-1, Roche Molecular Diagnostics, Pleasanton, CA) while those older than 18 months  
146 had a second ELISA test (Enzygnost Anti-HIV 1/2 Plus, Siemens/Dade Behring,  
147 Erlangen). HIV infection was defined as a positive PCR in children less than 18 months  
148 of age or two positive ELISA tests in older children. Children younger than 18 months  
149 who were ELISA positive, but PCR negative were classified as HIV exposed  
150 uninfected; older children were classified as HIV exposed uninfected if the mother was  
151 HIV infected at the time of the pregnancy but the child tested HIV negative.

152

153 Two nasopharyngeal (NP) swabs followed by an induced sputum (IS) specimen were  
154 collected from each child. The first NP specimen was taken using a cotton wool tipped  
155 swab and immediately put into a gel Amies transport medium and sent to the laboratory  
156 for culture. The second NP specimen was taken with a nylon flocculated swab  
157 (FLOQSwabs<sup>TM</sup>, Copan Diagnostics, Murrieta, CA) and immediately transferred into  
158 a nucleic acid preservation medium (PrimeStore®, Longhorn Vaccines & Diagnostics,  
159 San Antonio, TX). The IS specimen was collected after nebulization with a  
160 bronchodilator and hypertonic saline as previously described.[15] Briefly, children were  
161 fasted for 2–3 hours before sputum induction. Salbutamol nebulisation was given via a  
162 metered dose inhaler to reduce the risk of bronchospasm, after which 5 ml of 5% sterile



163 saline was given via an oxygen jet nebuliser at a rate of 5 l/min. After 15 min, the children  
164 were either suctioned or encouraged to cough, with suctioning performed through the  
165 nasopharynx with a sterile mucus extractor. Both specimens were frozen at minus 80°C  
166 until thawed for batched molecular diagnostic testing.

167 The Amies swab was inoculated onto a charcoal-enriched culture medium (Greenpoint  
168 Media Laboratory, National Health Laboratory Service, Cape Town, South Africa) and  
169 incubated for a minimum of seven days. If growth was detected, the bacterial colonies  
170 were tested by PCR as described below.

171

172 PCR specific for insertion sequences IS481 for *Bordetella* spp. and IS1001 for *B.*  
173 *parapertussis* was done with a validated commercial kit (LightMix® Kit *Bordetella*  
174 *pertussis* and *Bordetella parapertussis*, TIB MolBiol, Berlin, Germany) using  
175 previously published primers.[16] To exclude *Bordetella holmesii* (IS481 +, IS1001 -,  
176 hIS1001 +) before the diagnosis of *B. pertussis* infection was made, all specimens  
177 testing positive for IS481 were tested for the presence of insertion site hIS1001.[17]

178

### 179 Controls

180 Controls were children without symptoms or signs of respiratory illness presenting for  
181 other reasons to the same hospital or a nearby primary health care facility. Controls  
182 were matched to within 12 weeks of birth and 12 weeks of specimen collection of the  
183 cases testing positive for *Bordetella* spp. on the NP specimen. An average of three  
184 controls were matched to each case. One nylon flocked NP specimen was collected from  
185 each control and processed as described above.

186

187

188

189 Ethics

190 Approval for the study was granted by the Human Research Ethics Committee of the  
191 Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Cape Town, South Africa (Reference:  
192 371/2011). Written informed consent was obtained from a parent or legal guardian in  
193 their preferred language.

194

195 Sample size and statistical analysis

196

197 We calculated that a sample size of between 400 and 500 participants would give  
198 95% confidence intervals (CI) of 3% above and below our estimated prevalence of  
199 5%. Percentages with 95% CI were used to depict proportions of categorical variables  
200 while medians with interquartile ranges (IQR) were used to summarize all continuous  
201 variables.

202

203 Cumulative frequencies of confirmed *B. pertussis* were described and stratified by age  
204 category, HIV status and vaccination status.

205

206 A  $\chi^2$  or Fisher's exact test was used to assess the strength of association between two  
207 categorical variables as appropriate. The Mann-Whitney test was used to test the  
208 hypothesis of similarity between two groups with respect to a continuous variable. A two-  
209 tailed cut-off level of significance at  $p < 0.05$  was used in all hypothesis testing. All  
210 analyses were done using *Stata Statistical Software Release 13* (StataCorp LP,  
211 College Station, TX).

212

213

214

215 **Results**

216 Study participants

217 Over the study period, 7 792 children were hospitalised of whom 987 children had  
 218 respiratory illness. Of these, 460 (46.6%) eligible participants were enrolled. The median  
 219 age was 8 (IQR 4-18) months and 258 (56.1%) were male. Most children were HIV  
 220 unexposed uninfected (n=349; 75.9%) while 92 (20.0%) were HIV exposed uninfected  
 221 and 19 (4.1%) were HIV infected, table 1. Among HIV infected children, one was WHO  
 222 HIV stage 1 and one HIV stage 2, while 10 were stage 3 and seven were stage 4. Nine  
 223 (47.4%) HIV infected children were on ART of whom four had attained viral  
 224 suppression.

**Table 1: Baseline characteristics of the study participants, *Bordetella* cases and age matched NP controls**

<b>Baseline character</b>	<b>Study sample (N=460)</b>	<b>Positive NP cases (n=23)</b>	<b>Matched Controls (N=70)</b>
<b>Age</b>			
Median (IQR) months	8 (4-18) months	8 (2.5 - 14) months	8 (5-16) months
<b>Gender</b>			
	<b>n (%)</b>	<b>n (%)</b>	<b>n (%)</b>
Female	202 (43.9)	13 (56.5)	33 (47.1)
Male	258 (56.1)	10 (43.5)	37 (52.9)
<b>Pertussis doses received</b>			
0	28 (6.1)	2 (8.7)	2 (2.9)
1	57 (12.4)	5 (21.7)	1 (1.4)
2	58 (12.6)	4 (17.3)	4 (5.7)
≥ 3	308 (67)	12 (52.2)	49 (70.0)
Unknown	9 (2.0)	0 (0.0)	14 (20.0)
<b>HIV status</b>			
Unexposed Uninfected	349 (75.9)	17 (73.9)	68 (97.1)
Exposed Uninfected	92 (20)	5 (21.7)	0 (0.0)
Exposed Infected	19 (4.1)	1 (4.4)	2 (2.9)
<b>Presenting symptoms</b>			
Cough	456 (99.1)	23 (100)	NA
Apnoea	20 (4.5)	3 (13.0)	NA
Fever	288 (63.7)	10 (45.5)	NA
<b>Pre-hospital antibiotic</b>			
	<b>n=173</b>	<b>n=10</b>	
Penicillin	77 (44.5)	7 (70.0)	NA
Ceftriaxone	99 (57.2)	3 (30.0)	NA
Cotrimoxazole	4 (2.3)	0	NA
Erythromycin	1 (0.4)	0	NA

NP = Nasopharyngeal specimen; NA = Not applicable; NB. Only cases positive on NP shown for comparison with controls.

226 Immunisation status was unknown in nine children. Of 451 (98.0%) with immunisation  
227 records, 369 (85.2%) were up to date with pertussis vaccine doses for age while 308  
228 (68.3%) had completed the primary schedule. This did not differ by HIV status with  
229 237/345 (68.7%) in unexposed uninfected, 59/89(66.3%) in exposed uninfected and  
230 12/17 (70.6%) in HIV infected children respectively completing the primary schedule;  
231  $p=0.891$ .

232 Antibiotics were received by 173 (37.6%) children for a median duration of one day  
233 (IQR 1-1 days) prior to admission. Ceftriaxone ( $n=99$ ; 57.2 %) and penicillin ( $n=77$ ; 44.5  
234 %) were the commonest antibiotics received. Seven children received both ceftriaxone and  
235 penicillin while one child received both ceftriaxone and co-trimoxazole.

236

237 Cough (median duration 3, IQR 2-5 days) and fever were the commonest presenting  
238 symptoms, table 1. Apnoea was reported in 20 (4.4%) participants with a median age  
239 of 6 (IQR 3-16) months while those without apnoea had median age 8 (IQR 4-18)  
240 months;  $p=0.26$ .

241

#### 242 Description of microbiologic confirmation

243 Both NP and IS specimen collection were well tolerated and obtained in most children  
244 with no severe adverse reaction noted in any participant. NP specimens were obtained  
245 in all children. In four participants IS could not be obtained as children were transferred  
246 or discharged before the specimen could be collected. In all other children ( $n=456$ ; 99.1  
247 %), IS was successfully obtained. Two IS specimens were lost due to container leakage.

248

249 PCR for IS481 was positive in 17 of 460 NP specimens (3.7 %; 95% CI 2.2-5.9 %)  
250 while seven (1.5%; 95% CI 0.6-3.2%) were positive for IS1001. PCR was positive for  
251 both targets in one participant. Therefore 23 (5%; 95% CI 3.2-7.4%) NP specimens

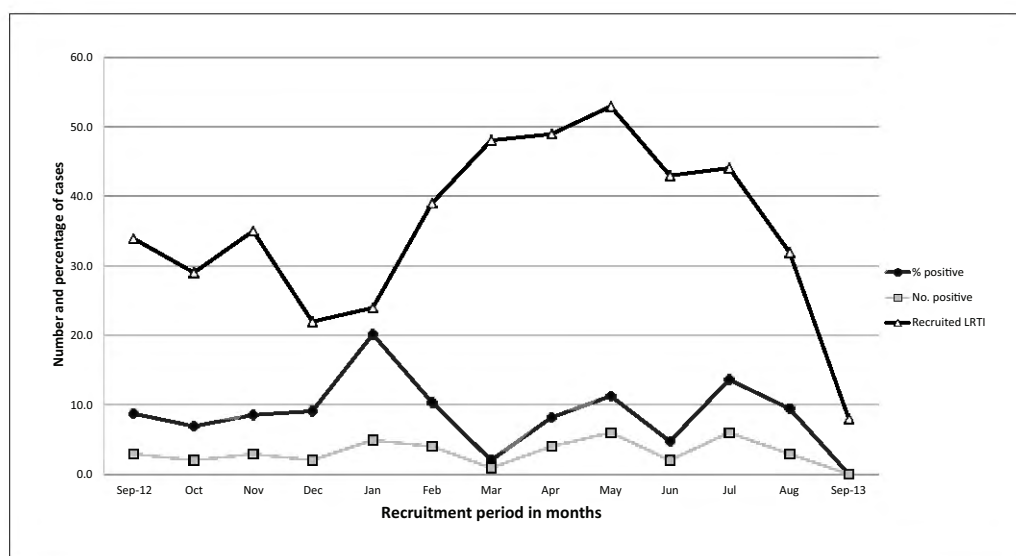
252 were positive for either target. Of the 454 IS specimens processed, 25 (5.5%; 95% CI  
 253 3.6-8.0%) were positive for insertion site IS481 and five (1.1%; CI 0.4%-2.5%) positive  
 254 for IS1001, giving a total of 30 (6.6%; CI 4.5-9.3%) IS specimens positive for either  
 255 *Bordetella* target.

256

257 NP specimens from four participants showed bacterial growth compatible with  
 258 *Bordetella* spp. on culture but only one was positive on PCR for the IS481 locus. The  
 259 same participant was also positive for IS481 on the flocced-swab NP specimen. NP  
 260 specimens from all 70 controls (table 1) were PCR negative for both IS481 and IS1001  
 261 insertion sites. As the other three cultures could not be confirmed as *Bordetella pertussis* or  
 262 *Bordetella parapertussis*, they were not included with positive cases.

263

264 None of the IS481 positive specimens were positive for the hIS1001 *B. holmesii* locus  
 265 and so all were classified as *B. pertussis* positive while all the IS1001 positive specimens  
 266 were classified as *B. parapertussis* positive. In total, 32 (7.0%; 95% CI 4.8-9.7%)  
 267 participants were *B. pertussis* positive and 11 (2.4%; 95% CI 1.2-4.2%) were *B.*  
 268 *parapertussis* positive from NP and IS specimens. Two participants were positive for  
 269 both organisms. This gave an incidence of 8.9% (95% CI 6.5-11.9%; n=41/460) for  
 270 either organism. The occurrence of *Bordetella* cases did not show any seasonal pattern  
 271 although enrolled LRTI cases in general peaked between March and July 2013, figure 1.



272

273 **Figure 1: Recruited lower respiratory tract infection cases showing number and percentage**  
 274 **of confirmed *Bordetella* per month**

275 Children with confirmed *B. pertussis* had a median age of 8 months (IQR 2-21), similar  
 276 to those without confirmed infection [median of 8 months (IQR 4-18); p=0.43]. A  
 277 higher proportion of cases occurred in infants younger than two months of age with  
 278 6/41 (14.6%) positive for *B. pertussis* compared to 26/419 (6.2%) in children older  
 279 than two months; p=0.043.

280

281 The risk of *B. pertussis* differed by HIV status with HIV unexposed uninfected having the  
 282 lowest risk (n=19/349; 5.4%). Exposed uninfected (n=10/92; 10.9%) had an intermediate  
 283 risk while HIV infected children (n=3/19; 15.8 %) had the highest risk.

284

285 Risk of *B. pertussis* infection declined with each additional dose of the vaccine  
 286 received. The highest risk was seen in children who had not received any vaccine with  
 287 5/28 (17.9%) having confirmed *B. pertussis*. The risk was 4/57 (7.0%), 4/58 (6.9%)  
 288 and 19/308 (6.2%) for children that received one, two and three or more doses  
 289 respectively. Table 2.

**Table 2: *Bordetella* incidence stratified by age group, HIV and vaccine doses (N=460)**

Stratifying variable	Stratum total (n)	<i>B. pertussis</i>	<i>B. parapertussis</i>	Total <i>Bordetella</i>
		Cases n (%)	Cases n (%)	Cases n* (%)
<b>Crude</b>	460	32 (7.0)	11 (2.4)	41 (8.9)
<b>Age group</b>				
< 2 months	41	6 (14.6)	0 (0.0)	6 (8.4)
≥ 2 months	419	26 (6.2)	11 (2.6)	35 (14.6)
<b>HIV status</b>				
Uninfected unexposed	349	19 (5.4)	10 (2.9)	27 (7.7)
Exposed uninfected	92	10 (10.9)	0 (0.0)	10 (10.9)
Exposed infected	19	3 (15.8)	1 (5.3)	4 (21.1)
<b>Pertussis vaccine doses</b>				
0	28	5 (17.9)	0 (0.0)	5 (17.9)
1	57	4 (7.0)	1 (1.8)	4 (7.0)
2	58	4 (6.9)	3 (5.2)	7 (12.1)
≥ 3	308	19 (6.2)	6 (2.0)	24 (7.8)
Unknown	9	0 (0.0)	1 (11.1)	1 (11.1)

\* Two cases were positive for both organisms. NB. Positive cases includes total diagnosed on nasopharyngeal and induced sputum specimens

290

291 Stratified *B. parapertussis* incidences were difficult to interpret because of small number of  
292 cases. Table 2.

293

#### 294 Use of IS versus NP specimen for diagnostic confirmation

295 Ten participants had a positive PCR for IS481 on both NP and IS. In one participant  
296 PCR for IS1001 was positive on both the NP and IS while in another IS1001 was  
297 positive on NP and IS481 positive on IS. The latter was counted as a single case of *B.*  
298 *pertussis*. In total 30 out of 41 (73.2%) *Bordetella* confirmed cases were detected on IS  
299 while only 23/41 (56.1%) were detected on NP (of which six were not identified on IS).

300

301 Testing of IS was able to identify 25/32 (78.1%) of all confirmed *B. pertussis*  
302 infections compared to 17/32 (53.1%) for NP. The use of IS increased the diagnostic  
303 yield of *B. pertussis* by 15 (46.9%) from 17/460 (3.7%) when NP was used alone compared  
304 to 32/460 (7.0 %), when used with IS (p=0.028) and that of total *Bordetella spp.* by an  
305 additional 18 (43.9%) from 23/460 (5.0%) when NP was used alone compared to 41/460  
306 (8.9%) when used with IS (p=0.020).

307

308 Participants positive for *B. pertussis* on IS specimens only (IS+/NP-), had a shorter  
309 duration of symptoms [median 2 (IQR 2-3) days] compared to those who were *B.*  
310 *pertussis* positive on NP specimen (NP+/IS- or NP+/IS+) [median 5 (IQR 3-7) days;  
311 p=0.0008]. None of the *B. pertussis* cases diagnosed on IS only (IS+/NP-) had a  
312 duration of symptoms longer than five days.

313

#### 314 Outcome

315

316 Only 4/41 (9.8%) of confirmed cases were clinically diagnosed as pertussis. The other

317 cases were diagnosed as lobar or bronchopneumonia (n=15; 36.6%), bronchiolitis  
318 (n=15; 36.6%) or other LRTI (n=7; 17.1%).

319 All participants were discharged from hospital with no in-hospital deaths occurring.  
320 Fourteen (3.0%) children were admitted to a High Dependency or Pediatric Intensive  
321 Care Units. Among these, 3/41 (7.3%) were *Bordetella* infected compared to 11/419  
322 (2.6%) in the uninfected group; p=0.120).

323

324 The median length of hospitalisation was two days (IQR 1-4); similar in *Bordetella*  
325 infected [2 (IQR 1-4.5) days] and uninfected children [2 (IQR 1-5) days; p=0.187]

326

## 327 **Discussion**

328

329 This study has shown that pertussis is common in South African children hospitalised  
330 with LRTI with an estimated 9% of our sample having laboratory confirmed infection. *B.*  
331 *pertussis* was responsible for 75% of the cases with *B. parapertussis* contributing the  
332 rest. These likely represent true cases of pertussis, as they had both clinical and  
333 microbiological evidence of disease while all results obtained from controls were  
334 negative. The rate is equivalent to 526 cases of laboratory confirmed pertussis for every  
335 100 000 children hospitalised and 4154 of 100 000 children specifically hospitalised  
336 with LRTI. The lack of data on the baseline population from which the cases  
337 originated made it difficult to estimate the true population incidence. Data from high-  
338 income countries report hospitalisation incidences of between 2 and 240 per 100 000  
339 population.[18-20] Possible reasons for the high incidence of disease in our study  
340 population include incomplete primary vaccination and a high burden of HIV which  
341 may reduce protection against pertussis.[21]

342



343 Pertussis cases occurred consistently throughout the year. The proportion of confirmed  
344 pertussis cases in our study did not show any seasonal pattern although there was an  
345 overall increase in the number of respiratory cases recruited over the winter months.  
346 The increase in winter enrolment was an expected finding that reflects a trend we have  
347 consistently observed over this time of the year. A study done around the same period  
348 in the same province of South Africa reported a similar pattern of increased overall  
349 respiratory cases over the winter months.[22] A recent study found the prevalence of  
350 pertussis to be lower than 1% in children hospitalised with bronchiolitis over the  
351 winter period. Differences in both diagnostic and sampling methodology made it  
352 difficult to compare this finding with the current study.[23]

353

354 HIV exposed and infected children showed higher risks for pertussis. This is of  
355 particular importance in this region with a high burden of maternal HIV with  
356 associated intrauterine exposure and infection.<sup>[24]</sup> The observed increase in pertussis  
357 cases in these groups may relate to both reduced vaccine effectiveness and passive  
358 immunity associated with HIV infection or exposure.[25-28] It is possible that these  
359 observations may have been confounded by other factors such as poverty, malnutrition and  
360 exposure to biofuels. Consistent with other studies, the risk of *B. pertussis* was higher in  
361 younger infants and decreased with each extra dose of vaccine received, with the lowest  
362 risk after a completed primary schedule. [18]

363

364 A novel, important finding was the higher sensitivity for diagnosis of *Bordetella* spp. on  
365 IS specimens, with more confirmed cases on IS compared to NP specimens. The use of  
366 NP specimen on its own would have missed 47% of *B. pertussis* cases compared to  
367 22% missed by IS. When used in addition to the traditional NP specimen, IS  
368 significantly increased the yield by 47%. IS was successfully obtained in almost all  
369 children and was well tolerated even in very young infants. Large studies of children

370 with suspected pulmonary TB have reported excellent safety, tolerability and good  
371 diagnostic yield of IS, even in infants.[15, 29] These data add to the increasing evidence  
372 of the utility and safety of IS for diagnostic confirmation of the aetiology of LRTI in  
373 young children.

374

375 This study also found that testing of IS is more likely to be positive early in the course  
376 of disease. Early diagnosis allows for targeted antibiotic therapy, which may reduce  
377 severity of illness and allow early prophylaxis for close contacts.[30, 31] The findings of  
378 this study suggest that IS should be the recommended specimen for testing children with  
379 suspected pertussis either on its own or in addition to NP specimen, rather than the  
380 current recommended practice of using NP specimen on its own.[9, 10]

381

382 Confirming prior studies, culture had very low sensitivity, suggesting that although this  
383 method of diagnosis offers opportunity for antibiotic sensitivity testing, it is ineffective for  
384 confirming a diagnosis.[5]

385

386 Limitations of this study include lack of detection of other pathogens. The finding of  
387 *Bordetella* infection does not preclude the possibility of co-infection that may have  
388 modified the disease presentation.[32-34] As only hospitalised cases were included in  
389 the study, the findings may not be generalizable to children with less severe forms of  
390 illness. The small number of confirmed cases limits the interpretation of stratified *B.*  
391 *parapertussis* incidence. Further studies to investigate these aspects are needed.

392

393 As our study demonstrates, the difficulty in diagnosing atypical pertussis may substantially  
394 underestimate its role in severe LRTI. Accurate diagnosis is important for timely  
395 treatment, institution of infection control measures and assessment of vaccine

396 effectiveness.[5] Macrolides may shorten the duration of symptoms and reduce the very  
397 high secondary attack rate associated with *B. pertussis*. [30, 31] Although concerns exist of  
398 rapid emergence of resistance to macrolide antibiotics, empiric use should be considered in  
399 young African infants and HIV exposed or infected children hospitalised with LRTI,  
400 particularly where pertussis immunisation is incomplete. [35, 36]

401

## 402 **Acknowledgement**

403

404 We would like to thank the laboratory personnel as well as the study staff and  
405 participants for their immense contribution. We are also grateful to Drs Anthony  
406 Hawkrigde and Nicole Guiso who reviewed the protocol.

407

408

## References

409

- 410 1. Mattoo S, Cherry JD. Molecular pathogenesis, epidemiology, and clinical manifestations  
411 of respiratory infections due to *Bordetella pertussis* and other *Bordetella* subspecies.  
412 *Clinical microbiology reviews*. 2005;18(2):326-82. Epub 2005/04/16. doi:  
413 10.1128/cmr.18.2.326-382.2005.
- 414 2. Crowcroft NS, Stein C, Duclos P, Birmingham M. How best to estimate the global burden  
415 of pertussis? *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2003;3(7):413-8. Epub 2003/07/03.
- 416 3. World Health Organisation. Managing pertussis outbreaks during humanitarian  
417 emergencies. Geneva: World Health Organisation, 2008.
- 418 4. Cherry JD. Pertussis: challenges today and for the future. *PLoS pathogens*.  
419 2013;9(7):e1003418. Epub 2013/08/13. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003418.
- 420 5. Wood N, McIntyre P. Pertussis: review of epidemiology, diagnosis, management and  
421 prevention. *Paediatr Respir Rev*. 2008;9(3):201-11; quiz 11-2. Epub 2008/08/13. doi:  
422 10.1016/j.prrv.2008.05.010.
- 423 6. Cherry JD, Tan T, Wirsing von Konig CH, Forsyth KD, Thisyakorn U, Greenberg D, et al.  
424 Clinical definitions of pertussis: Summary of a Global Pertussis Initiative roundtable  
425 meeting, February 2011. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the*  
426 *Infectious Diseases Society of America*. 2012;54(12):1756-64. Epub 2012/03/21. doi:  
427 10.1093/cid/cis302.
- 428 7. Fry NK, Tzivra O, Li YT, McNiff A, Doshi N, Maple PA, et al. Laboratory diagnosis of  
429 pertussis infections: the role of PCR and serology. *J Med Microbiol*. 2004;53(Pt 6):519-  
430 25. Epub 2004/05/20.
- 431 8. Riffelmann M, Wirsing von Konig CH, Caro V, Guiso N. Nucleic Acid amplification tests  
432 for diagnosis of *Bordetella* infections. *J Clin Microbiol*. 2005;43(10):4925-9. Epub  
433 2005/10/07. doi: 10.1128/jcm.43.10.4925-4929.2005.
- 434 9. Crowcroft NS, Pebody RG. Recent developments in pertussis. *Lancet*.  
435 2006;367(9526):1926-36. Epub 2006/06/13. doi: S0140-6736(06)68848-X [pii]  
436 10.1016/S0140-6736(06)68848-X [doi].

- 437 10. Gregory DS. Pertussis: a disease affecting all ages. *Am Fam Physician*. 2006;74(3):420-6.  
438 Epub 2006/08/18.
- 439 11. Singh M, Lingappan K. Whooping cough: the current scene. *Chest*. 2006;130(5):1547-53.  
440 Epub 2006/11/14. doi: 130/5/1547
- 441 12. World Health Organisation. WHO-recommended surveillance standard of pertussis [11  
442 July 2019)]. Available from:  
443 [http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring\\_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance\\_type/  
444 passive/pertussis\\_standards/en/](http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance_type/passive/pertussis_standards/en/).
- 445 13. Ngcobo NJ. New EPI vaccines guidelines. Pretoria, South Africa: National Department of  
446 Health; 2010. p. 1-15.
- 447 14. Corrigan J, Coetzee D, Cameron N. Is the Western Cape at risk of an outbreak of  
448 preventable childhood diseases? Lessons from an evaluation of routine immunisation  
449 coverage. *South African medical journal = Suid-Afrikaanse tydskrif vir geneeskunde*.  
450 2008;98(1):41-5. Epub 2008/02/14.
- 451 15. Planting NS, Visser GL, Nicol MP, Workman L, Isaacs W, Zar HJ. Safety and efficacy of  
452 induced sputum in young children hospitalised with suspected pulmonary tuberculosis.  
453 *The international journal of tuberculosis and lung disease : the official journal of the  
454 International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease*. 2014;18(1):8-12. Epub  
455 2013/12/25. doi: 10.5588/ijtld.13.0132.
- 456 16. Farrell DJ, Daggard G, Mukkur TK. Nested duplex PCR to detect *Bordetella pertussis* and  
457 *Bordetella parapertussis* and its application in diagnosis of pertussis in nonmetropolitan  
458 Southeast Queensland, Australia. *J Clin Microbiol*. 1999;37(3):606-10. Epub 1999/02/13.
- 459 17. Tatti KM, Sparks KN, Boney KO, Tondella ML. Novel multitarget real-time PCR assay  
460 for rapid detection of *Bordetella* species in clinical specimens. *J Clin Microbiol*.  
461 2011;49(12):4059-66. Epub 2011/09/24. doi: 10.1128/jcm.00601-11.
- 462 18. Heininger U, Weibel D, Richard JL. Prospective nationwide surveillance of  
463 hospitalizations due to pertussis in children, 2006-2010. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*.  
464 2014;33(2):147-51. Epub 2014/01/15. doi: 10.1097/01.inf.0000435503.44620.74.
- 465 19. Cortese MM, Baughman AL, Zhang R, Srivastava PU, Wallace GS. Pertussis  
466 hospitalizations among infants in the United States, 1993 to 2004. *Pediatrics*.  
467 2008;121(3):484-92. Epub 2008/03/04. doi: 10.1542/peds.2007-1393.
- 468 20. Elliott E, McIntyre P, Ridley G, Morris A, Massie J, McEniery J, et al. National study of  
469 infants hospitalized with pertussis in the acellular vaccine era. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*.  
470 2004;23(3):246-52. Epub 2004/03/12.
- 471 21. Clemens J, Shin S, Ali M. New approaches to the assessment of vaccine herd protection in  
472 clinical trials. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2011;11(6):482-7. Epub 2011/05/28. doi: 10.1016/s1473-  
473 3099(10)70318-2.
- 474 22. le Roux DM, Myer L, Nicol MP, Zar HJ. Incidence and severity of childhood pneumonia  
475 in the first year of life in a South African birth cohort: the Drakenstein Child Health  
476 Study. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(2):e95-e103. doi: 10.1016/S2214-109X(14)70360-2.
- 477 23. Piedra PA, Mansbach JM, Jewell AM, Thakar SD, Grant CC, Sullivan AF, et al.  
478 *Bordetella pertussis* is an uncommon pathogen in children hospitalized with bronchiolitis  
479 during the winter season. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2015;34(6):566-70. doi:  
480 10.1097/INF.0000000000000596.
- 481 24. UNAIDS. Global Statistics. Fact Sheet 2014 [17 July 2019]. Available from:  
482 [http://www.unaids.org/sites/default/files/en/media/unaids/contentassets/documents/factshe  
483 et/2014/20140716\\_FactSheet\\_en.pdf](http://www.unaids.org/sites/default/files/en/media/unaids/contentassets/documents/factsheet/2014/20140716_FactSheet_en.pdf).
- 484 25. Tejiokem MC, Gouandjika I, Beniguel L, Zanga MC, Tene G, Gody JC, et al. HIV-  
485 infected children living in Central Africa have low persistence of antibodies to vaccines  
486 used in the Expanded Program on Immunization. *PLoS One*. 2007;2(12):e1260. Epub  
487 2007/12/07. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0001260 [doi].
- 488 26. Tejiokem MC, Njamkepo E, Gouandjika I, Rousset D, Beniguel L, Bilong C, et al.  
489 Whole-cell pertussis vaccine induces low antibody levels in human immunodeficiency  
490 virus-infected children living in sub-Saharan Africa. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*.  
491 2009;16(4):479-83. Epub 2009/02/06. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00312-08 [doi].
- 492 27. Jones CE, Naidoo S, De Beer C, Esser M, Kampmann B, Hesselning AC. Maternal HIV

- 493 infection and antibody responses against vaccine-preventable diseases in uninfected  
494 infants. *JAMA*. 2011;305(6):576-84. Epub 2011/02/10. doi: 10.1001/jama.2011.100.
- 495 28. Kidzeru EB, Hesselning AC, Passmore JA, Myer L, Gamiendien H, Tchakoute CT, et al. In-  
496 utero exposure to maternal HIV infection alters T-cell immune responses to vaccination in  
497 HIV-uninfected infants. *AIDS (London, England)*. 2014;28(10):1421-30. Epub  
498 2014/05/03. doi: 10.1097/qad.0000000000000292.
- 499 29. Zar HJ, Hanslo D, Apolles P, Swingler G, Hussey G. Induced sputum versus gastric  
500 lavage for microbiological confirmation of pulmonary tuberculosis in infants and young  
501 children: a prospective study. *Lancet*. 2005;365(9454):130-4. Epub 2005/01/11. doi:  
502 10.1016/s0140-6736(05)17702-2.
- 503 30. Altunajji S, Kukuruzovic R, Curtis N, Massie J. Antibiotics for whooping cough  
504 (pertussis). *The Cochrane database of systematic reviews*. 2007;(3):Cd004404. Epub  
505 2007/07/20. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD004404.pub3.
- 506 31. Tiwari T, Murphy TV, Moran J. Recommended antimicrobial agents for the treatment and  
507 postexposure prophylaxis of pertussis: 2005 CDC Guidelines. *MMWR Recommendations  
508 and reports : Morbidity and mortality weekly report Recommendations and reports /  
509 Centers for Disease Control*. 2005;54(Rr-14):1-16. Epub 2005/12/13.
- 510 32. Ishiguro T, Takayanagi N, Yamaguchi S, Yamakawa H, Nakamoto K, Takaku Y, et al.  
511 Etiology and factors contributing to the severity and mortality of community-acquired  
512 pneumonia. *Internal medicine (Tokyo, Japan)*. 2013;52(3):317-24. Epub 2013/02/02.
- 513 33. Cilloniz C, Ewig S, Ferrer M, Polverino E, Gabarrus A, Puig de la Bellacasa J, et al.  
514 Community-acquired polymicrobial pneumonia in the intensive care unit: aetiology and  
515 prognosis. *Critical care (London, England)*. 2011;15(5):R209. Epub 2011/09/15. doi:  
516 10.1186/cc10444.
- 517 34. Hammitt LL, Kazungu S, Morpeth SC, Gibson DG, Mvera B, Brent AJ, et al. A  
518 preliminary study of pneumonia etiology among hospitalized children in Kenya. *Clinical  
519 infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America*.  
520 2012;54 Suppl 2:S190-9. Epub 2012/03/21. doi: 10.1093/cid/cir1071.
- 521 35. Sliagl WI, Asadi L, Eurich DT, Tjosvold L, Marrie TJ, Majumdar SR. Macrolides and  
522 mortality in critically ill patients with community-acquired pneumonia: a systematic  
523 review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(2):420-32. Epub 2013/10/26. doi:  
524 10.1097/CCM.0b013e3182a66b9b.
- 525 36. Kuster SP, Rudnick W, Shigayeva A, Green K, Baqi M, Gold WL, et al. Previous  
526 antibiotic exposure and antimicrobial resistance in invasive pneumococcal disease: results  
527 from prospective surveillance. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the  
528 Infectious Diseases Society of America*. 2014;59(7):944-52. Epub 2014/06/29. doi:  
529 10.1093/cid/ciu497.
- 530

# Chapter 4

## Risk factors for *Bordetella pertussis* disease in hospitalised children

### Risk factors for pertussis in children

Rudzani Muloiwa<sup>1\*</sup>, Felix S. Dube<sup>2,3</sup>, Mark P. Nicol<sup>4,5</sup>, Gregory D Hussey<sup>3,6</sup>, Heather J. Za<sup>7,8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Groote Schuur Hospital, University of Cape Town, South Africa

<sup>2</sup> Department of Molecular and Cell Biology, Faculty of Science, University of Cape Town

<sup>3</sup> Institute of Infectious Disease & Molecular Medicine, University of Cape Town, South Africa

<sup>4</sup> Division of Medical Microbiology, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Cape Town, South Africa

<sup>5</sup> Division of Infection and Immunity, School of Biomedical Sciences, University of Western Australia

<sup>6</sup> Vaccines for Africa Initiative, Division of Medical Microbiology, University of Cape Town, South Africa

<sup>7</sup> SA-MRC unit on Child & Adolescent Lung Health, University of Cape Town, Cape Town, South Africa

<sup>8</sup> Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital, University of Cape Town, South Africa,

**\*Corresponding author (RM)**

E-mail: [Rudzani.Muloiwa@uct.ac.za](mailto:Rudzani.Muloiwa@uct.ac.za)

30 **Abstract**

31 **Background:** Risk factors for pertussis in children in low and middle-income  
32 countries are poorly understood, despite a resurgence of disease. This study aimed to  
33 investigate risk factors for pertussis disease in African children hospitalised with  
34 severe LRTI.

35 **Methods:** A prospective study of children hospitalised with severe LRTI in Cape  
36 Town, South Africa was conducted over a one-year period. A nasopharyngeal and  
37 induced sputum samples from child and nasopharyngeal sample from caregiver were  
38 tested for *Bordetella pertussis* using PCR (IS481+/hIS1001). History and clinical  
39 details were documented.

40 **Results:** 460 children with a median age of 8 (IQR 4-18) months were enrolled. *B.*  
41 *pertussis* infection was confirmed in 32 (7.0%). The adjusted risk of confirmed  
42 pertussis was significantly increased if infants were younger than two months [aRR  
43 2.37 (95% CI 1.03-5.42)], HIV exposed but uninfected (aRR 3.53[95% CI 1.04-12.01])  
44 or HIV infected (aRR 4.35[95% CI 1.24-15.29]). Mild (aRR 2.27 [95% CI 1.01-5.09])  
45 or moderate (aRR 2.70 [95% CI 1.13-6.45]) under-nutrition in the children respectively  
46 were also associated with higher risk. The highest adjusted risk occurred in children  
47 whose caregivers had *B. pertussis* detected from nasopharyngeal swabs (aRR 13.82  
48 [95% CI 7.76-24.62]). Completion of the primary vaccine schedule (three or more  
49 doses) was protective (aRR 0.28 [95% CI 0.10-0.75]).

50 **Conclusions:** HIV exposure or infection, undernutrition as well as detection of  
51 maternal nasal *B. pertussis* were associated with increased risk of pertussis in African  
52 children, especially in young infants. Completed primary vaccination was protective.  
53 There is an urgent need to improve primary pertussis vaccine coverage in low and  
54 middle-income countries. Pertussis vaccination of pregnant women, especially those  
55 with HIV infection should be prioritized.

## 56 **Introduction**

57

58 The last decade has seen a resurgence of pertussis in high-income countries to levels  
59 experienced over half a century ago.[1] Possible reasons for this include waning  
60 immunity following acellular vaccination, antigenic divergence of circulating strains  
61 from vaccine antigens as well as increased ascertainment due to improved diagnostic  
62 tools.[2-5]

63

64 Introduction of the whole cell (wP) pertussis vaccine in the 1940s greatly reduced the  
65 incidence of pertussis. wP has since been succeeded by acellular vaccines (aP), mainly in  
66 high-income countries. The South Africa National Expanded Programme on  
67 Immunisation (EPI) replaced wP with a combination formulation aP (DTaP-IPV/HIB;  
68 Pentaxim®, Sanofi Pasteur) in 2009. The primary schedule comprises doses at six, ten  
69 and 14 weeks with a booster at 18 months of age.[6]. Current data indicates that vaccine  
70 coverage for the Western Cape Province, where this study was done, is 97% at six  
71 weeks, 90.8% at 10 weeks and 85.2% at 14 weeks. By 18 months of age coverage had  
72 declined to 58.7%.[7]

73

74 Risk factors for pertussis include lack of immunisation or impaired immune  
75 responses to vaccination. Laboratory studies suggest that immune responsiveness to  
76 pertussis vaccines may be impaired by both infection and intrauterine exposure to HIV  
77 even in HIV-uninfected children. [8-11] Another factor associated with reduced immune  
78 responses to pertussis vaccine is poor nutritional status, a common problem among children in  
79 low and middle-income countries (LMIC).[12] Although household use of biomass fuels,  
80 indoor air pollution, and cigarette smoking have been associated with an increased risk of  
81 respiratory illness and bacterial carriage in children, it is unclear if these impact on the risk of  
82 pertussis.[13]



83

84 With the resurgence of pertussis, adults and adolescents, who tend to exhibit milder  
85 and atypical symptoms, are now recognized as important sources of pertussis in  
86 infants. In particular, household contacts pose the greatest risk to unvaccinated or  
87 partially vaccinated infants.[14-16]

88

89 We aimed to investigate risk factors for *Bordetella pertussis* disease in a cohort of African  
90 children less than 13 years of age hospitalised with lower respiratory tract infection (LRTI)  
91 in a high HIV prevalence setting.[17]

92

### 93 **Materials and Methods**

94 Children less than 13 years of age admitted over a one-year period (07 September 2012 to  
95 06 September 2013) for LRTI to the Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital  
96 (RCH), Cape Town, South Africa, were prospectively screened for enrolment. Children  
97 with WHO-defined severe pneumonia (age specific tachypnoea or/and lower chest  
98 indrawing requiring hospitalisation) or apnoea were eligible to be included. A child  
99 was included if the legal guardian gave written consent and the child had not been in  
100 contact with a health care facility in the previous 48 hours to two weeks prior to  
101 screening for enrolment. Enrolment was limited to the first four qualifying children per  
102 working weekday.

103

104 History of symptoms of the presenting illness and information on current socio-  
105 demographic factors including type of housing, access to amenities such as tap water,  
106 electricity and toilet facilities, was taken from the caregiver. The mother's level of  
107 education was recorded. Socio-economic status was categorized into quartiles on the basis  
108 of a validated weighted composite score used elsewhere that included asset ownership,

109 employment and education.[18] The use of household biofuels, presence of smokers in the  
110 household and the number of people sharing the bedroom with the child were established.  
111 Information on day-care attendance was also collected.

112

113 The mother's HIV status (and that of the primary caregiver if this was not the mother) was  
114 established. If the mother or caregiver was HIV infected the latest available CD4 count was  
115 recorded and used in the staging of HIV disease according to the Centre for Disease  
116 Control (CDC) classification.[19] History was taken on the presence and duration of recent  
117 primary caregiver respiratory symptoms as well as presence and numbers of other  
118 household members with similar symptoms.

119 The vaccination status of each child was verified using the national standardized  
120 immunisation handheld record, the Road to Health Card (RTHC); specifically, the date  
121 and type of each vaccine was copied from the record.

122

123 The weight of each child, as measured on admission, was used to evaluate nutritional  
124 status using WHO weight for age Z scores (WAZ). Mild under-nutrition was defined  
125 as  $\leq -1$  WAZ  $> -2$ , moderate under-nutrition  $\leq -2$  WAZ  $> -3$  and severe under-  
126 nutrition WAZ  $\leq -3$ .[20]

127

128 Each child was screened for HIV infection using an ELISA test (Architect HIV Ag/Ab  
129 Combo, Abbott Diagnostics, Wiesbaden). The diagnosis of HIV infection was made  
130 if both the ELISA and an HIV PCR test (COBAS AmpliPrep/COBAS Taqman HIV-1,  
131 Roche Molecular Diagnostics, Pleasanton, CA) were positive in children younger than 18  
132 months. A positive ELISA was confirmed with a different ELISA test (Enzygnost Anti-  
133 HIV 1/2 Plus, Siemens/Dade Behring, Erlangen) in children older than 18 months to  
134 diagnose HIV infection. Children younger than 18 months who were ELISA positive,

135 but PCR negative were classified as HIV exposed uninfected while older children were  
136 classified as HIV exposed uninfected if the mother was HIV infected at the time of the  
137 pregnancy, but the child tested HIV negative. Caregivers who did not know their HIV  
138 status were counselled and offered HIV testing. Children or caregivers with HIV who were  
139 not accessing appropriate treatment were referred to public health facilities for further  
140 follow-up and treatment of HIV.

141

142 Methods employed in the collection of respiratory specimens have been published.[21]  
143 Briefly, nasopharyngeal (NP) specimens from caregivers as well as paired NP and  
144 induced sputum (IS) specimens from children were tested by PCR for *B. pertussis*. The  
145 NP specimen was taken with a flocced nylon swab which was transported in a nucleic  
146 acid preservation medium (PrimeStore<sup>®</sup> MTM, Longhorn Vaccines and Diagnostics,  
147 San Antonio, TX). The IS specimen was collected after the NP was taken from each  
148 child. All specimens were frozen at minus 80°C until they were thawed for batched  
149 molecular diagnostic testing.

150

151 A commercially validated duplex real-time PCR assay targeting the insertion sequence  
152 IS481 for *Bordetella* and IS1001 for *Bordetella parapertussis* (LightMix<sup>®</sup> *Bordetella*  
153 *pertussis* and *parapertussis* Kit, TIB MolBiol, Berlin, Germany) was used for screening  
154 all the respiratory specimens.[22, 23] All specimens testing positive for IS481 were  
155 further tested for the presence of insertion site hIS1001 in order to exclude *Bordetella*  
156 *holmesii* (IS481 +, IS1001-, hIS1001 +) before the diagnosis of *B. pertussis* infection  
157 was made.[24]

158

## 159 **Ethics**

160 The study was approved by the Human Research Ethics Committee of the Faculty of

161 Health Sciences of the University of Cape Town; Reference: 371/2011. Written  
162 informed consent was sought and received from the legal guardian for the participation  
163 of both the child and the guardian/caregiver in the study.

164

### 165 **Analysis plan**

166 The study aimed to investigate risk factors for pertussis as a secondary outcome and  
167 was thus not specifically powered to achieve this secondary outcome. The study  
168 sample was determined to attain a 3% precision above and below a point estimate risk  
169 of 5% for the primary outcome (prevalence of pertussis).

170

171 Categorical data are presented as percentages with 95% confidence intervals (CI). All  
172 continuous data are summarized as medians with interquartile ranges (IQR). A  $\chi^2$  test  
173 assessed strength of association between two categorical variables with a two-tailed cut-off  
174 significance set at  $p < 0.05$ .

175

176 A causal model employing the current understanding of respiratory disease processes and  
177 pathogenesis of pertussis was constructed using a directed acyclic graph (DAG) to identify  
178 variables in the model required for minimal sufficient adjustment sets for estimating total  
179 independent effects of each assessed risk factor.[25]

180

181 To adjust for potential confounders for each risk factor as identified by the DAG, a  
182 generalized linear Poisson regression model with robust error variance was used to  
183 estimate adjusted relative risks (aRR) and their 95% level of confidence in a  
184 multivariable analysis. For all analyses, *Stata Statistical Software Release 13*  
185 (StataCorp LP, College Station, TX) was employed.

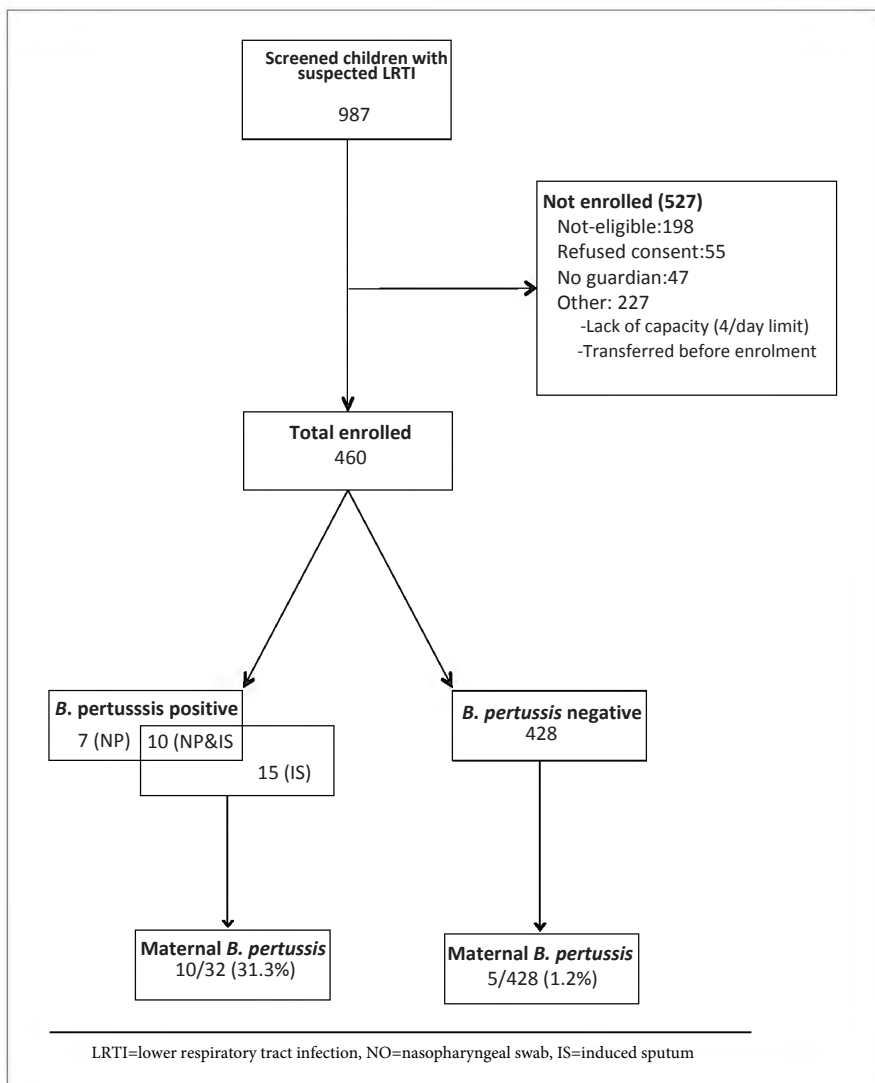
186

187 **Results**

188

189 **Baseline characteristics of children**

190 In total, 987 children hospitalised for acute LRTI were screened; 460 child-caregiver  
191 pairs were enrolled; figure 1. The median age of children was 8 (IQR 4-18) months with  
192 41 (8.9%) younger than two months of age. The median duration of symptoms was 3  
193 days (IQR 2-5 days); 173 (37.6%) received antibiotics prior to admission, Table 1.



194

195 **Fig 1. Enrolment flow diagram of study participants showing**  
196 **number of *Bordetella pertussis* positive children and caregivers**  
197 LRTI=lower respiratory tract infection, NP=nasopharyngeal swab, IS=induced sputum

198  
199  
200  
201

**Table 1: Baseline characteristics of enrolled children (N=460)**

Baseline character	Frequency n (%)
<b>Age</b>	
< 2 months old	41 (8.9)
≥ 2 months old	419 (91.1)
<b>Gender</b>	
Female	202 (43.9)
Male	258 (56.1)
<b>Pertussis vaccine doses</b>	
0	28 (6.1)
1	57 (12.4)
2	58 (12.6)
≥ 3	308 (67)
Unknown	9 (2)
<b>Nutritional status (WAZ)#</b>	
Normal nutrition	351 (76.3)
Mild under-nutrition	64 (13.9)
Moderate under-nutrition	33 (7.2)
Severe under-nutrition	12( 2.6)
<b>HIV status</b>	
Unexposed Uninfected	349 (75.9)
Exposed Uninfected	92 (20)
Exposed Infected	19 (4.1)
<b>Presenting symptoms</b>	
Cough	456 (99.1)
Apnoea	20 (4.5)
Fever	288 (63.7)
<b>Pre-hospital antibiotic (n=173)</b>	
Penicillin	77 (44.5)
Ceftriaxone	99 (57.2)
Cotrimoxazole	4 (2.3)
Erythromycin	1 (0.4)

# Normal: WAZ > -1, Mild: ≤ -1 WAZ > -2, Moderate: ≤ -2 WAZ > -3, Severe: WAZ ≤ -3, WAZ = World Health Organization weight for age Z score

202 Ninety-two (20.0 %) children were HIV exposed and uninfected while infection was  
203 confirmed in 19 (4.1%) (table 1) of whom nine were on antiretroviral therapy, four with  
204 viral suppression. Of the 19 children, one was WHO HIV stage 1; another was HIV stage 2  
205 and 10 were HIV stage 3 and 4 respectively.

206

207 Most children 351(76.3%) were adequately nourished with weight for age Z score > -1.  
208 Mild under-nutrition was found in 64 (13.9%), moderate under-nutrition in 33 (7.2%)  
209 and severe under-nutrition in 12 (2.6%) children; table 1. Only 60 (13.0%) of the

210 children had not received any form of breastfeeding, exclusive or otherwise. The majority  
211 (n=323, 77.2%) was breast-fed for the first four months of life and 77 (16.7%) for  
212 longer than four months.

213

214 Most children (n=451; 98.0%) had their RTHC available and their immunisation status,  
215 including the number of vaccine doses could be verified, table 1. Nineteen (4.2%)  
216 children were younger than six weeks and had as yet not received the first dose of  
217 pertussis vaccine. Of the 432 (95.8%) old enough to receive at least one vaccine dose,  
218 369 (85.4%) had received expected doses for age.

219

#### 220 **Confirmed *Bordetella pertussis* in children**

221 NP specimens were obtained from all child participants. Four children were  
222 transferred or discharged out of the ward before an IS specimen could be obtained.

223 For the remaining 456 children, IS was successfully obtained with no major adverse  
224 events, although two were later lost to container leakage.

225

226 PCR for IS481 was positive in 17 NP specimens and 25 IS specimens. There was an  
227 overlap of positive NP and IS specimens in 10 participants giving a total of 32 (7.0%;  
228 95% CI 4.8-9.7%) children with confirmed *B. pertussis* infection. *B. parapertussis*  
229 (IS1001+) was detected in seven (1.5%; 95% CI 0.6-3.2%) children. *B. holmesii* was  
230 excluded in all the positive specimens by the absence of hIS1001.

231 **Caregiver baseline characteristics**

232 All 460 primary caregivers took part in the study of whom 450 (97.8%) were mothers. For  
 233 the remaining 10 children, the caregiver was the father in two (0.4%) instances,  
 234 grandmother in five (1.1%) and another relative in the other three (0.7%) children. In  
 235 451(98.0%) of the recruited pairs, the caregiver slept in the same room as the child. The  
 236 median age of the caregivers was 28 (IQR 24-33) years. In the week the child presented to  
 237 hospital, 171 (37.2%) of the caregivers had respiratory symptoms. The symptoms,  
 238 predominantly of an upper respiratory tract infection, were present in 10 (31.3%) of  
 239 caregivers whose children had confirmed pertussis and in 161 (37.7) whose children did  
 240 not have pertussis; p=0.466. Baseline characteristics of the caregivers are summarized in  
 241 Table 2.

**Table 2: Caregiver characteristics by child's *B. pertussis* PCR status**

Baseline character	PCR negative (n=428)	PCR positive (n=32)
	n (%)	n (%)
<b>Gender</b>		
Female	426 (99.6)	32 (100.0)
<b>HIV status</b>		
Infected	88 (22.9)	13 (40.6)
<b>Presenting symptoms</b>		
Cough	96 (22.4)	7 (21.9)
Runny nose	107 (25)	6 (18.8)
Wheeze	35 (8.2)	3 (9.4)
Fever	100 (23.4)	6 (18.8)
<b><i>B. pertussis</i> NP</b>		
PCR positive	5 (1.2)	10 (31.3)

NP = nasopharyngeal swab specimen



243 HIV infection was present in 111 (24.1%) of caregivers whom 55 (49.5%) were on  
244 antiretroviral treatment.

245

246 Cigarette smoking was recorded in 162 (35.2%) of the households although only 33 (7.2%)  
247 of the caregivers were themselves smokers. The use of biofuels for cooking or heating was  
248 uncommon and reported in 18 (3.9%) households.

249

### 250 **Confirmed *Bordetella pertussis* in caregivers**

251 NP specimens were successfully obtained from all 460 caregivers. IS481 was positive in 15  
252 (3.3%; 95% CI 1.8-5.3%) of the caregivers, 10 in mothers of children with confirmed *B.*  
253 *pertussis* infection, table 2. All IS481 positive specimens were negative for the hIS1001 *B.*  
254 *holmesii* locus.

255

256 Caregivers with detected nasal *B. pertussis* were all mothers of enrolled children and all slept in  
257 the same bedroom with the child. No association was noted between presence of maternal  
258 symptoms and confirmed *B. pertussis* infection [4/171 (2.3%) symptomatic versus 11/289  
259 (3.8%) asymptomatic;  $p=0.392$ ]. There was no difference in the duration of symptoms between  
260 caregivers with confirmed pertussis and those without: median 3 (IQR 2.5-5) days and 2 (IQR 2-  
261 5) days respectively;  $p=0.513$ . *B. pertussis* was detected in 6 (5.4%) of HIV infected caregivers  
262 compared to 9 (2.6%) of those who were not;  $p=0.214$ .

263

264 **Effect of risk factors**

265 Unadjusted and adjusted effects of factors on risk of pertussis disease in children are  
 266 shown in Table 3.

**Table 3: Risk factors for confirmed *Bordetella pertussis* infection in study children**

Risk factor	Risk n/N (%)	Relative Risk (95% Confidence Interval)	
		Crude	Adjusted*
<b>Age</b>			
≥ 2 months old	26/419 (6.2)	1	1
< 2 months old	6/41 (14.6)	<b>2.36 (1.03-5.40)</b>	<b>2.37 (1.03-5.42)</b>
<b>Nutritional status</b>			
Normal	19/351 (5.4)	1	1
Mild under-nutrition	8/64 (12.5)	<b>2.31 (1.06-5.05)</b>	<b>2.27 (1.01-5.09)</b>
Moderate under-nutrition	5/33 (15.2)	<b>2.80 (1.12-7.02)</b>	<b>2.70 (1.13-6.45)</b>
Severe under-nutrition	0/12 (0.0)	NA	NA
<b>HIV status</b>			
Unexposed uninfected	19/349 (5.4)	1	1
Exposed uninfected	10/92 (10.9)	2.00 (0.96-4.15)	<b>3.53 (1.04-12.01)</b>
Infected	3/19 (15.8)	2.90 (0.94-8.96)	<b>4.35 (1.24-15.29)</b>
<b>Pertussis vaccine doses</b>			
None	5/28 (17.9)	1	1
One	4/57 (7.0)	0.49 (0.11-1.35)	0.39 (0.11-1.33)
Two	5/58 (6.9)	0.47 (0.14-1.51)	0.33 (0.09-1.19)
Three and more	19/308 (6.2)	<b>0.33 (0.13-0.81)</b>	<b>0.28 (0.10-0.75)</b>
<b>Caregiver <i>B. pertussis</i></b>			
PCR negative	22/455 (4.9)	1	1
PCR positive	10/15 (66.7)	<b>13.48 (7.84-23.21)</b>	<b>13.82 (7.76-24.62)</b>
<b>Home cigarette smoking</b>			
No home smoker	21/298 (7.0)	1	1
Home smoker	11/162 (6.8)	0.96 (0.48-1.95)	0.98 (0.49-1.98)
<b>Bio-fuel use</b>			
No bio-fuel	29/442 (6.6)	1	1
Use of bio-fuel	3/18 (16.7)	2.54 (0.85-7.57)	2.40 (0.73-7.91)

n/N (%) = stratum specific proportion and percent. \* Multivariable models adjusted for age, sex, HIV status, socio-economic status, breast-feeding and number of household members with cough. Risk ratio 95% confidence intervals that do not cross the null value of 1 are shown in **bold typeface**

268 Clinical features of children with and without pertussis were similar except for fever  
269 which was present in 274 (64.0%) of children without pertussis compared to 14  
270 (43.8%) in children with pertussis;  $p=0.022$ . LRTI cases with confirmed *B. pertussis*  
271 had a median age of 8 months (IQR 2-21), similar to LRTI cases without pertussis [8  
272 months (IQR 4-18)];  $p=0.43$ ). However, the risk of pertussis was significantly  
273 increased in young infants less than two months of age; 14.6% versus 6.2%; aRR 2.37  
274 (95% CI 1.03-5.42).

275

276 No association was found between household air pollution or smoking and risk of pertussis  
277 was identified even after adjusting for potential confounders.

278

279 Both HIV exposure and HIV infection were independently associated with an increased  
280 risk of confirmed *B. pertussis* infection with aRR 3.53 (1.04-12.01) and 4.35(1.24-  
281 15.29) respectively. The risk of *B. pertussis* declined with each extra dose of pertussis  
282 vaccine independent of age, although the reduction only became significant after completion  
283 of the 3-dose primary vaccine schedule; aRR 0.28 (95% CI 0.10-0.75).

284

285 Mild and moderate under-nutrition were also associated with an increased risk of pertussis in the  
286 adjusted model, however no cases occurred in severely under-nourished children, table 3.

287

288 Detection of maternal nasal *B. pertussis* was most strongly associated with an increased

289 risk of pertussis in the children with aRR 13.82(7.76-24.62). HIV infected caregivers were  
290 more likely to have children with confirmed pertussis infection with 13/111 (11.7%) compared  
291 to 19/349 (5.4%) in HIV negative caregivers; p=0.024.

292

## 293 **Discussion**

294

295 This study reports important, novel findings of significant increased risk of pertussis in  
296 children exposed to HIV *in utero* and in children with HIV infection as well as in children  
297 with poor nutritional status. In addition, the highest risk of pertussis-associated LRTI in  
298 hospitalised African children was in those whose mothers had *B. pertussis* detected in  
299 nasopharyngeal specimens, with more than 13 fold increased risk. This study also confirms  
300 known factors, namely, incomplete primary vaccination and early infancy as important  
301 risks for pertussis in an LMIC setting.

302

303 Sub-Saharan Africa, where this study was conducted, carries a high burden of HIV,  
304 including a large number of infected or exposed children. In the current study, after  
305 adjusting for potential confounding, HIV-infected children had a four-fold increase in  
306 the risk of pertussis, possibly due to reduced vaccine effectiveness due to both poor  
307 responses to vaccination as well as low persistence of immunoglobulin following  
308 vaccination.[8, 9] This increased risk may also reflect increased parental susceptibility. A  
309 study Nigerian study showed a 20-fold risk of pertussis in adolescents not yet initiated  
310 on anti-retroviral therapy.[26] Other recent studies have reported an increased risk of

311 pertussis in HIV infected individuals.[27-30]The quality and duration of immunity to  
312 pertussis in HIV infected children once they are started on antiretroviral therapy is  
313 uncertain.[31] The small number of HIV-infected children in our study made it  
314 impossible for us to investigate these aspects.

315

316 HIV-exposed, but uninfected, children are increasingly emerging as a group more  
317 susceptible to developing disease compared to unexposed children, due to successful  
318 implementation of prevention of mother to child transmission strategies with a  
319 reduction in vertically transmitted HIV.[32] This study identifies HIV exposure *in*  
320 *utero* as a significant important risk factor for pertussis, consistent with other reports  
321 that suggested an increased risk in infants, even if the findings were not significant. In  
322 our study a quarter of the mothers were HIV infected. The increased risk in HIV  
323 exposed uninfected children seems related to reduced immunoglobulin levels  
324 passively transmitted from the mother, increased exposure to pertussis in a HIV-  
325 household as well as possible impaired responses to vaccination that are not yet  
326 clearly understood.[10, 11]

327

328 The high risk of pertussis-associated LRTI in children whose mothers had  
329 nasopharyngeal *B. pertussis* is consistent with studies showing that most infants  
330 acquire pertussis from an older sibling or parent.[14] Consequently, attempts to protect  
331 young infants have advocated cocooning, which involves vaccinating household  
332 members, as well as antenatal and postnatal vaccination of mothers of neonates.

333 Whereas cocooning does not seem cost-effective, antenatal vaccination of mothers has  
334 shown promising protection for infants with no added risk to either the mother or the  
335 pregnancy.[33-37]. In our study, the risk of pertussis may be partially explained by the  
336 high proportion of HIV infected caregivers who exhibited a higher risk for  
337 nasopharyngeal carriage compared to HIV uninfected caregivers (5.4% vs 2.6%)  
338 although these findings were not statistically significant most likely due to small  
339 numbers.

340

341 The risk of *B. pertussis* infection independently decreased with each extra dose of  
342 vaccine received, but as observed in other studies, statistically significant reduction  
343 was only seen with completion of at least three doses.[38, 39] This highlights the great  
344 risk pertussis poses to children in LMIC who, according to WHO, largely receive  
345 incomplete vaccination.[40, 41] This risk is further increased by the high incidence of  
346 endemic childhood malnutrition.[42]

347

348 The study is limited by low frequencies of pertussis in some subgroups. Even when the  
349 study possessed sufficient power to demonstrate statistically significant risk, the estimated  
350 magnitude had low precision in some instances. A further limitation is that the study was  
351 done in children hospitalised with LRTI so the generalizability of the results to children with  
352 less severe illness requires further study.

353

354

## 355 **Conclusions**

356 There is an urgent need for interventions in LMICs to address modifiable risk factors for  
357 pertussis. Such interventions should include nutritional support and immunisation.

358 Immunisation programs should be strengthened to ensure high levels of coverage for children  
359 with at least three vaccine doses and include catch-up immunisation for missed doses. A key  
360 consideration is to prioritise vaccination of pregnant women, particularly those who are  
361 HIV infected, as maternal infection is the greatest risk for disease in infants.[43]

362

## 363 **Acknowledgements**

364 We would like to acknowledge the participants, laboratory personnel and study staff  
365 for their immense contribution. The authors acknowledge financial support to their  
366 institution by Sanofi Pasteur for the submitted work.

367

368

## References

369

- 370 1. Tan T, Dalby T, Forsyth K, Halperin SA, Heininger U, Hozbor D, et al. Pertussis Across  
371 the Globe: Recent Epidemiologic Trends From 2000-2013. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2015. doi:  
372 10.1097/INF.0000000000000795.
- 373 2. Cherry JD. Pertussis: challenges today and for the future. *PLoS pathogens*.  
374 2013;9(7):e1003418. Epub 2013/08/13. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003418.
- 375 3. Clark TA. Changing pertussis epidemiology: everything old is new again. *J Infect Dis*.  
376 2014;209(7):978-81. Epub 2014/03/15. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiu001.
- 377 4. Mooi FR, Van Der Maas NA, De Melker HE. Pertussis resurgence: waning immunity and  
378 pathogen adaptation - two sides of the same coin. *Epidemiology and infection*.  
379 2014;142(4):685-94. doi: 10.1017/S0950268813000071.
- 380 5. Edwards KM, Berbers GAM. Immune Responses to Pertussis Vaccines and Disease.  
381 *Journal of Infectious Diseases*. 2014;209(suppl 1):S10-S5. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jit560.
- 382 6. Ngcobo NJ. New EPI vaccines guidelines. Pretoria, South Africa: National Department of  
383 Health; 2010. p. 1-15.
- 384 7. Corrigall J, Coetzee D, Cameron N. Is the Western Cape at risk of an outbreak of  
385 preventable childhood diseases? Lessons from an evaluation of routine immunisation  
386 coverage. *South African medical journal = Suid-Afrikaanse tydskrif vir geneeskunde*.  
387 2008;98(1):41-5. Epub 2008/02/14.
- 388 8. Tejiokem MC, Gouandjika I, Beniguel L, Zanga MC, Tene G, Gody JC, et al. HIV-  
389 infected children living in Central Africa have low persistence of antibodies to vaccines  
390 used in the Expanded Program on Immunization. *PLoS One*. 2007;2(12):e1260. Epub  
391 2007/12/07. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0001260 [doi].
- 392 9. Tejiokem MC, Njamkepo E, Gouandjika I, Rousset D, Beniguel L, Bilong C, et al.

- 393 Whole-cell pertussis vaccine induces low antibody levels in human immunodeficiency  
394 virus-infected children living in sub-Saharan Africa. *Clin Vaccine Immunol.*  
395 2009;16(4):479-83. Epub 2009/02/06. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00312-08 [doi].
- 396 10. Jones CE, Naidoo S, De Beer C, Esser M, Kampmann B, Hesselning AC. Maternal HIV  
397 infection and antibody responses against vaccine-preventable diseases in uninfected  
398 infants. *JAMA.* 2011;305(6):576-84. Epub 2011/02/10. doi: 10.1001/jama.2011.100.
- 399 11. Kidzeru EB, Hesselning AC, Passmore JA, Myer L, Gamielien H, Tchakoute CT, et al. In-  
400 utero exposure to maternal HIV infection alters T-cell immune responses to vaccination in  
401 HIV-uninfected infants. *AIDS (London, England).* 2014;28(10):1421-30.
- 402 12. Gaayeb L, Pincon C, Cames C, Sarr JB, Seck M, Schacht AM, et al. Immune response to  
403 *Bordetella pertussis* is associated with season and undernutrition in Senegalese children.  
404 *Vaccine.* 2014;32(27):3431-7. Epub 2014/04/15. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.03.086.
- 405 13. Vanker A, Nduru PM, Barnett W, Dube FS, Sly PD, Gie RP, et al. Indoor air pollution  
406 and tobacco smoke exposure: impact on nasopharyngeal bacterial carriage in mothers and  
407 infants in an African birth cohort study. *ERJ Open Res.* 2019;5(1). Epub 2019/02/12. doi:  
408 10.1183/23120541.00052-2018.
- 409 14. Jardine A, Conaty SJ, Lowbridge C, Staff M, Vally H. Who gives pertussis to infants?  
410 Source of infection for laboratory confirmed cases less than 12 months of age during an  
411 epidemic, Sydney, 2009. *Communicable diseases intelligence quarterly report.*  
412 2010;34(2):116-21. Epub 2010/08/04.
- 413 15. Wendelboe AM, Njamkepo E, Bourillon A, Floret DD, Gaudelus J, Gerber M, et al.  
414 Transmission of *Bordetella pertussis* to young infants. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.*  
415 2007;26(4):293-9. Epub 2007/04/07. doi: 10.1097/01.inf.0000258699.64164.6d.
- 416 16. von Konig CH, Halperin S, Riffelmann M, Guiso N. Pertussis of adults and infants.  
417 *Lancet Infect Dis.* 2002;2(12):744-50. Epub 2002/12/07. doi: S1473309902004528 [pii].
- 418 17. Muloiwa R, Dube FS, Nicol MP, Zar HJ, Hussey GD. Incidence and Diagnosis of  
419 Pertussis in South African Children Hospitalized With Lower Respiratory Tract Infection.  
420 *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* 2016;35(6):611-6. doi: 10.1097/INF.0000000000001132.
- 421 18. Zar HJ, Barnett W, Myer L, Stein DJ, Nicol MP. Investigating the early-life determinants  
422 of illness in Africa: the Drakenstein Child Health Study. *Thorax.* 2015;70(6):592-4.
- 423 19. Centers for Disease Control and prevention. 1993 revised classification system for HIV  
424 infection and expanded surveillance case definition for AIDS among adolescents and  
425 adults. *JAMA.* 1993;269(4):460.
- 426 20. World Health Organisation. Child growth standards [10 August 2015]. Available from:  
427 [http://www.who.int/childgrowth/standards/weight\\_for\\_age/en/](http://www.who.int/childgrowth/standards/weight_for_age/en/).
- 428 21. Planting NS, Visser GL, Nicol MP, Workman L, Isaacs W, Zar HJ. Safety and efficacy of  
429 induced sputum in young children hospitalised with suspected pulmonary tuberculosis.  
430 *The international journal of tuberculosis and lung disease : the official journal of the*  
431 *International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease.* 2014;18(1):8-12. Epub  
432 2013/12/25. doi: 10.5588/ijtld.13.0132.
- 433 22. Farrell DJ, Daggard G, Mukkur TK. Nested duplex PCR to detect *Bordetella pertussis* and  
434 *Bordetella parapertussis* and its application in diagnosis of pertussis in nonmetropolitan  
435 Southeast Queensland, Australia. *J Clin Microbiol.* 1999;37(3):606-10. Epub 1999/02/13.
- 436 23. Reischl U, Lehn N, Sanden GN, Loeffelholz MJ. Real-time PCR assay targeting IS481 of  
437 *Bordetella pertussis* and molecular basis for detecting *Bordetella holmesii*. *J Clin*  
438 *Microbiol.* 2001;39(5):1963-6. doi: 10.1128/JCM.39.5.1963-1966.2001.
- 439 24. Tatti KM, Sparks KN, Boney KO, Tondella ML. Novel multitarget real-time PCR assay  
440 for rapid detection of *Bordetella* species in clinical specimens. *J Clin Microbiol.*  
441 2011;49(12):4059-66. Epub 2011/09/24. doi: 10.1128/jcm.00601-11.
- 442 25. Textor J, Hardt J, Knuppel S. DAGitty: a graphical tool for analyzing causal diagrams.  
443 *Epidemiology (Cambridge, Mass).* 2011;22(5):745. Epub 2011/08/04. doi:  
444 10.1097/EDE.0b013e318225c2be.
- 445 26. Anukam KC, Osazuwa EE, Mbata TI, Ahonkhai IN. Increased incidence of pertussis and  
446 parapertussis in HIV-1-positive adolescents vaccinated previously with whole-cell  
447 pertussis vaccine. *World Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology.* 2004;20(3):231-4.  
448 doi: 10.1023/B:WIBI.0000023825.36332.fl.



- 449 27. Kayina V, Kyobe S, Katabazi FA, Kigozi E, Okee M, Odongkara B, et al. Pertussis  
450 prevalence and its determinants among children with persistent cough in urban Uganda.  
451 PLoS One. 2015;10(4):e0123240. Epub 2015/04/16. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0123240.
- 452 28. Barger-Kamate B, Deloria Knoll M, Kagucia EW, Prospero C, Baggett HC, Brooks WA,  
453 et al. Pertussis-Associated Pneumonia in Infants and Children From Low- and Middle-  
454 Income Countries Participating in the PERCH Study. *Clinical infectious diseases : an*  
455 *official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.* 2016;63(suppl 4):S187-  
456 s96. Epub 2016/11/14. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciw546.
- 457 29. Nunes MC, Downs S, Jones S, van Niekerk N, Cutland CL, Madhi SA. Bordetella  
458 pertussis Infection in South African HIV-Infected and HIV-Uninfected Mother-Infant  
459 Dyads: A Longitudinal Cohort Study. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication*  
460 *of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.* 2016;63(suppl 4):S174-s80. Epub  
461 2016/11/14. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciw527.
- 462 30. Soofie N, Nunes MC, Kgagudi P, van Niekerk N, Makgobo T, Agosti Y, et al. The  
463 Burden of Pertussis Hospitalization in HIV-Exposed and HIV-Unexposed South African  
464 Infants. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases*  
465 *Society of America.* 2016;63(suppl 4):S165-s73.
- 466 31. Sutcliffe CG, Moss WJ. Do children infected with HIV receiving HAART need to be  
467 revaccinated? *Lancet Infect Dis.* 10(9):630-42.
- 468 32. Kabami J, Turyakira E, Biraro S, Bajunirwe F. Increasing incidence of pregnancy among  
469 women receiving HIV care and treatment at a large urban facility in western Uganda.  
470 *Reproductive health.* 2014;11:81. Epub 2014/12/07. doi: 10.1186/1742-4755-11-81.
- 471 33. Munoz FM, Bond NH, Maccato M, Pinell P, Hammill HA, Swamy GK, et al. Safety and  
472 immunogenicity of tetanus diphtheria and acellular pertussis (Tdap) immunization during  
473 pregnancy in mothers and infants: a randomized clinical trial. *Jama.* 2014;311(17):1760-9.  
474 Epub 2014/05/06. doi: 10.1001/jama.2014.3633.
- 475 34. Amirthalingam G, Andrews N, Campbell H, Ribeiro S, Kara E, Donegan K, et al.  
476 Effectiveness of maternal pertussis vaccination in England: an observational study.  
477 *Lancet.* 2014;384(9953):1521-8. Epub 2014/07/20. doi: 10.1016/s0140-6736(14)60686-3.
- 478 35. Dabrera G, Amirthalingam G, Andrews N, Campbell H, Ribeiro S, Kara E, et al. A case-  
479 control study to estimate the effectiveness of maternal pertussis vaccination in protecting  
480 newborn infants in England and Wales, 2012-2013. *Clinical infectious diseases : an*  
481 *official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America.* 2015;60(3):333-7. doi:  
482 10.1093/cid/ciu821.
- 483 36. Lim GH, Deeks SL, Crowcroft NS. A cocoon immunisation strategy against pertussis for  
484 infants: does it make sense for Ontario? *Euro Surveill.* 2014;19(5). Epub 2014/02/15.
- 485 37. Skowronski DM, Janjua NZ, Tsafack EP, Ouakki M, Hoang L, De Serres G. The number  
486 needed to vaccinate to prevent infant pertussis hospitalization and death through parent  
487 cocoon immunization. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the*  
488 *Infectious Diseases Society of America.* 2012;54(3):318-27.
- 489 38. Heininger U, Weibel D, Richard JL. Prospective nationwide surveillance of  
490 hospitalizations due to pertussis in children, 2006-2010. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.*  
491 2014;33(2):147-51. Epub 2014/01/15. doi: 10.1097/01.inf.0000435503.44620.74.
- 492 39. Juretzko P, von Kries R, Hermann M, Wirsing von Konig CH, Weil J, Giani G.  
493 Effectiveness of acellular pertussis vaccine assessed by hospital-based active surveillance  
494 in Germany. *Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases*  
495 *Society of America.* 2002;35(2):162-7. Epub 2002/06/28. doi: 10.1086/341027.
- 496 40. World Health Organisation. Immunization, Vaccines and Biologicals [1 August 2017].  
497 Available from: [http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring\\_surveillance/data/en/](http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/data/en/).
- 498 41. Delamonica E, Minujin A, Gulaid J. Monitoring equity in immunization coverage.  
499 *Bulletin of the World Health Organization.* 2005;83(5):384-91.
- 500 42. UNICEF. Progress for Children. A World Fit for Children Statistical Review Number 6  
501 [Internet]. 2007 2007 [cited 2007 2007].
- 502 43. Muloiwa R, Wolter N, Mupere E, Tan T, Chitkara AJ, Forsyth KD, et al. Pertussis in  
503 Africa: Findings and recommendations of the Global Pertussis Initiative (GPI). *Vaccine.*  
504 2018;36(18):2385-93. Epub 2018/04/01. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2018.03.025.

## Chapter 5

### 1 **Co-detection of *Bordetella pertussis* and other respiratory organisms in children** 2 **hospitalised with lower respiratory tract infection**

3

4 Rudzani Muloiwa<sup>1\*</sup>, Felix S. Dube<sup>2,3,5</sup>, Mark P. Nicol<sup>4,5</sup>, Gregory D Hussey<sup>3,6</sup>, Heather J. Zar<sup>7,8</sup>

5

6

7 <sup>1</sup> Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Groote Schuur Hospital, University of Cape Town, South  
8 Africa

9 <sup>2</sup> Department of Molecular and Cell Biology, Faculty of Science, University of Cape Town

10 <sup>3</sup> Institute of Infectious Disease & Molecular Medicine, University of Cape Town, South Africa

11 <sup>4</sup> Division of Medical Microbiology, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Cape Town, South Africa

12 <sup>5</sup> Division of Infection and Immunity, School of Biomedical Sciences, University of Western Australia

13 <sup>6</sup> Vaccines for Africa Initiative, Division of Medical Microbiology, University of Cape Town, South  
14 Africa

15 <sup>7</sup> SA-MRC unit on Child & Adolescent Lung Health, University of Cape Town, Cape Town, South Africa

16 <sup>8</sup> Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital, University  
17 of Cape Town, South Africa,

18

19

20 Keywords: *Bordetella pertussis*, *Bordetella parapertussis*, pertussis

21 \*Corresponding author: Rudzani Muloiwa, Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Groote Schuur  
22 Hospital, Anzio Road, Observatory, University of Cape Town, South Africa Tel: +27 21 650 1779, E-  
23 mail: Rudzani.Muloiwa@uct.ac.za

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32 **Abstract**

33

34 Multiple potential pathogens are frequently co-detected among children with lower  
35 respiratory tract infection (LRTI). Evidence indicates that *Bordetella pertussis* has an  
36 important role in the aetiology of LRTI. We aimed to study the association between *B.*  
37 *pertussis* and other respiratory pathogens in children hospitalised with severe LRTI,  
38 and to assess clinical relevance of co-detection. Nasopharyngeal (NP) swabs and  
39 induced sputa (IS) were tested with a *B. pertussis* specific PCR; additionally, IS was  
40 tested for other pathogens using a multiplex PCR. We included 454 children, median  
41 age 8 months (IQR 4-18), 31 (7%) of whom tested positive for *B. pertussis*. Children  
42 with *B. pertussis* had more bacterial pathogens detected (3 versus 2; P<0.001). While  
43 *B. pertussis* showed no association with most pathogens, it was independently  
44 associated with *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* and parainfluenza  
45 viruses with adjusted risk ratios of 4.01 (1.03-15.64), 4.17 (1.42-12.27) and 2.13 (1.03-  
46 4.55), respectively. There was a consistent increased risk of severe disease with *B.*  
47 *pertussis*. Patterns indicated even higher risks when *B. pertussis* was co-detected with  
48 any of the three organisms although not statistically significant. Improving vaccine  
49 coverage against *B. pertussis* would impact not only the incidence of pertussis but also  
50 that of severe LRTI generally.

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

66

67

68 **Introduction**

69

70 Lower respiratory tract infection (LRTI) is responsible for a large burden of morbidity  
71 and mortality in children each year. [1] Current understanding is that the aetiology of  
72 LRTI may frequently be polymicrobial, with various combinations of viral and  
73 bacterial pathogens implicated in the pathogenesis.[2-5] *Bordetella pertussis*, the  
74 organism that causes whooping cough, is one of the organisms strongly associated  
75 with LRTI in children, however the role of other organisms in the pathogenesis of  
76 LRTI is not well-understood. [4]

77

78 Effective vaccines against *B. pertussis* have been available since the 1940's. Initially  
79 these were of the whole cell type (wP) but have since the 1990's been superseded by  
80 acellular vaccines (aP) mainly in high income countries.[6] The introduction and wide  
81 use of vaccines have markedly reduced the burden of pertussis over the last six  
82 decades, but there is strong evidence that pertussis has resurged all over the world in  
83 recent years, bringing into focus *B. pertussis* as an important respiratory pathogen in  
84 the aetiology of respiratory illness, including LRTI.[7, 8]

85

86 Although the presence of *B. pertussis* has been described together with other  
87 organisms that are potential co-pathogens in individuals with LRTI, most studies have  
88 focused on the role of viruses in respiratory tract co-infections.[9] As a result,  
89 potential interactions between *B. pertussis* and other organisms remain poorly  
90 understood.[10-12] The organism, *B. pertussis*, produces several toxins that aid the  
91 organism in evading the immune system, assisting it to establish infection on the  
92 respiratory epithelium.[13, 14]

93 We hypothesise that the conditions produced by *B. pertussis* toxins not only create a  
94 conducive environment for *B. pertussis* itself but may facilitate the colonisation or  
95 infection of the respiratory tract epithelium by other bacteria or viruses. In this study,  
96 we aimed to investigate whether the detection of *B. pertussis* in children hospitalised  
97 for LRTI was associated with co-detection of other potential respiratory pathogens.  
98 We also explore whether there was an association between co-detection and clinical  
99 severity and outcome.

100

## 101 **Methods**

102

### 103 **Recruitment and specimen collection**

104

105 Methods for sampling as well as inclusion criteria have been described  
106 elsewhere.[15] Briefly, the study recruited inpatient children seen at a referral  
107 hospital, Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital (RCH) in Cape Town,  
108 South Africa over a one-year period (September 2012 to September 2013).  
109 Children were recruited if they presented with cough and WHO defined age  
110 specific tachypnoea, or apnoea, and were ill enough to warrant admission. Only children  
111 whose legal guardians were present to give written consent were enrolment.  
112 Being in contact with the health care services in the preceding two weeks was an  
113 exclusion criterion.

114

115 To assess the severity of respiratory symptoms, the presence of chest indrawing was  
116 noted. In addition, all children had pulse oximetry to assess for oxygen saturation.  
117 A cut-off of <94% was used to define hypoxaemia in children at sea level.[16-18]  
118 A detailed history of the current illness was collected, and participants underwent

119 testing for HIV infection. The diagnosis of HIV infection was made for children  
120 less than 18 months of age if they tested positive for two HIV PCR tests (COBAS  
121 AmpliPrep/COBAS Taqman HIV-1, Roche Molecular Diagnostics, Pleasanton,  
122 CA). For children above 18 months of age, HIV infection was diagnosed on the  
123 basis of two positive ELISA tests using two different assays (Architect HIV  
124 Ag/Ab Combo, Abbott Diagnostics, Wiesbaden; and Enzygnost Anti-HIV 1/2  
125 Plus, Siemens/Dade Behring, Erlange sequentially).

126

127 All children had anthropometry (weight and height), performed at enrolment by  
128 trained study staff. Nutritional status was classified using WHO weight for age z-  
129 scores (WAZ). Children were classified as moderate to severely malnourished if  
130 their weight for age fell below -2 z-scores.

131

132 The children's vaccination status was sourced from their handheld clinic booklets. The  
133 primary schedule according to the South African Expanded Program on  
134 Immunisation, in addition to other vaccines, contains an acellular (aP) vaccine against  
135 *B. pertussis* combined with that against *Haemophilus influenzae type b* at 6, 10 and 14  
136 weeks (with a booster at 18 months), and vaccination with 13-valent pneumococcal  
137 conjugate (PCV13) vaccine at 6 and 10 weeks of age (with a booster at 9 months)

138 .[19]

139

140 A nasopharyngeal (NP) swab was collected first after which an induced sputum (IS)  
141 specimen was collected on enrolment as previously described.[20] Molecular  
142 diagnostic testing was carried out on batched specimens as described below. No  
143 blood culture was done as part of the study.

144

145 **Laboratory methods**

146

147 Diagnosis of *Bordetella pertussis*

148 To diagnose *Bordetella pertussis* infection, PCR specific for IS481 for *Bordetella*  
149 species was conducted on both NP and IS specimens with a validated commercial kit  
150 (Roche LightMix®, Basel) using previously published primers.[21] *Bordetella*  
151 *holmesii* (defined as IS481 + and hIS1001 +) infection was excluded by further  
152 testing all IS481 positive specimens for the presence of insertion site hIS1001.[22]

153

154 Diagnosis of co-infections

155 The FTDRsp 33 multiplex real-time PCR assay (Fast-Track Diagnostics, Esch-sur-  
156 Alzet, Luxembourg) was used to identify presence of a range of viruses and bacteria  
157 as well as *Pneumocystis jirovecii* on IS. As the study was designed specifically to  
158 study the epidemiology of pertussis in this population, for the analysis, *B. pertussis*  
159 results from LightMix® for *B. pertussis* (rather than those from FTDRsp 33)  
160 were used as our assessment indicated that the assay had better sensitivity for *B.*  
161 *pertussis* than Fast-Track, although both employ the same targets.

162

163

164 **Statistical analysis**

165

166 We used percentages to depict proportions of study participants with organisms  
167 detected from respiratory specimens. Continuous data were tested for normality  
168 and summarized as medians with interquartile ranges (IQR) or means and  
169 standard deviations (SD) as appropriate. The difference in total numbers of organisms  
170 detected in participants with and without confirmed *B. pertussis* was compared using

171 Student's t-test.  $\chi^2$  or Fisher's exact tests were used to assess the strength of association  
172 between infection with *B. pertussis* and each co-pathogen. All associations at a two-tailed  
173  $p < 0.1$  were further analysed adjusted for sex, age and HIV status as potential  
174 confounders. Generalised linear modelling using Poisson regression with robust  
175 error variance was used to estimate adjusted relative risks (aRR) and their 95%  
176 confidence intervals in a multivariable analysis. Severity of clinical disease and  
177 outcomes were further analysed stratified by a combination pertussis status and organisms  
178 showing strong association with pertussis. Continuous data were tested for normality and  
179 comparisons between groups were made with the appropriate test for parametric or non-  
180 parametric data as indicated. Statistical significance was set at a two-side  $P < 0.05$ . All  
181 analyses were carried out using *Stata Statistical Software Release 13* (StataCorp  
182 LP, College Station, TX).

183

#### 184 **Statement on ethics approval**

185 Prior approval for the study was obtained from the Human Research Ethics  
186 Committee of the Faculty of Health Sciences of the University of Cape Town;  
187 reference: 371/2011. Written informed consent was sought and received from the  
188 parent or legal guardian of each child in order for the child to participate in the  
189 study. All methods were carried out in accordance with the relevant guidelines  
190 and regulations.

191

192

193

194

195

196



197 **Results**

198

199 **Baseline data**

200 Four hundred and sixty children were enrolled. Six children, including four whose IS  
201 could not be collected and two whose IS were lost prior to processing during transportation  
202 or storage, were excluded, providing 454 participants with sufficient data for analysis, of  
203 which 253 (55.7%) were male.

204

205 The median age of the children was 8 (IQR 4 -18) months. HIV infection was  
206 confirmed in 19 (4.2%) of the children. Nine children (2.0%) did not have their  
207 immunisation records with them. Of the 445 (98.0%) with known vaccination  
208 status, 321(72.1%) were up to date with pertussis and *Haemophilus influenzae type*  
209 *b* vaccine doses for age, while 427 (96.0%) had received at least one dose of the  
210 combination. Similarly, 312 (70.1%) were up to date with PCV13 doses for age  
211 with 385 (86.5%) having received at least one dose of the vaccine. Baseline  
212 characteristics of the study group are summarized in Table 1.

213

214

215

216

217

**Table 1: Baseline characteristics of study participants**

Baseline character	<i>N</i> =454
<b>Age</b>	
Median (IQR) months	8 (4-18)
<b>Male sex</b>	<b>n (%)</b> 253 (55.7.)
<b>Pertussis/<i>H. influenzae type b</i> vaccines</b>	
0	31 (6.8)
1	59 (13.0)
2	61 (13.4)
≥ 3	294 (64.8)
Unknown	9 (2.0)
<b>PVC13 vaccine doses</b>	
0	60 (13.2)
1	108 (23.8)
2	139 (30.6)
3	138 (30.4)
Unknown	9 (2.0)
<b>HIV infected</b>	19 (4.2)
<b>Nutritional status</b>	
Normal	384 (90.8)
WAZ ≤ -2	39 (9.2)
<b>Pre-hospital antibiotic</b>	
Yes	153 (36.2)
No	270 (63.8)
<b>Oxygen saturation &lt; 94% in room air</b>	70 (15.4)
<b>Chest indrawing</b>	380 (83.7)
<b>Confirmed <i>Bordetella pertussis</i></b>	31(6.8)

---

WAZ=World Health Organization weight for age Z-score < -2

218

219 **Confirmed *Bordetella pertussis* infection**

220 PCR for insertion site *IS481* was positive in 16 NP specimens and 25 IS specimens

221 on LightMix®. Ten participants had a positive PCR on both NP and IS specimens,

222 therefore 31 (6.8%; 95% CI 4.7-9.6%) participants were confirmed as having *B.*

223 *pertussis* infection. The *B. holmesii* insertion site *hIS1001*, was not identified in

224 any of the *IS481* positive specimens. Only 10 (2.2%) samples, all also found to be

225 positive on LightMix®, were positive for *B. pertussis* on Fast-Track testing of IS  
226 samples.

227

228 The median age of children with confirmed *B. pertussis* was 8 (IQR 2-22) months  
229 while those testing negative had a median age of 8 (IQR 4-18) months; P=0.559.

230

### 231 **General description of PCR detected pathogens**

232 In most participants (n=412; 90.7%) both a viral and bacterial organism were co-  
233 detected from the IS specimen. Four hundred and forty-one (97.1%) participants had  
234 at least one virus identified from an IS specimen. There were 29 (6.4%) participants in  
235 whose specimens only a viral pathogen was detected with no bacterial pathogens detected. In  
236 421 (92.7%) at least one bacterial species was identified. There were 9 (2.0%) participants in  
237 whose specimens only a bacterial pathogen was detected with no viral pathogens detected.  
238 Four (0.9%) of the 454 children did not have any organism (including *B. pertussis*)  
239 identified from their IS specimen.

240

241 For all participants with confirmed *B. pertussis* infection, a minimum of two  
242 organisms were identified. The average number of viruses detected in children with  
243 and without confirmed pertussis were 2.5 (SD 1.4) and 2.3 (SD 1.3) respectively;  
244 P=0.665. Children with confirmed pertussis had on average 3.0 (SD 1.6) different  
245 bacterial species detected while those without had 2.0 (SD 1.1); P<0.001. When both  
246 bacterial and viral organisms were considered, the average number identified in  
247 pertussis positive participants was 5.5 (SD 2.0) and 4.4 (SD 1.9) in the pertussis  
248 negative group; P=0.009. Figure 1.

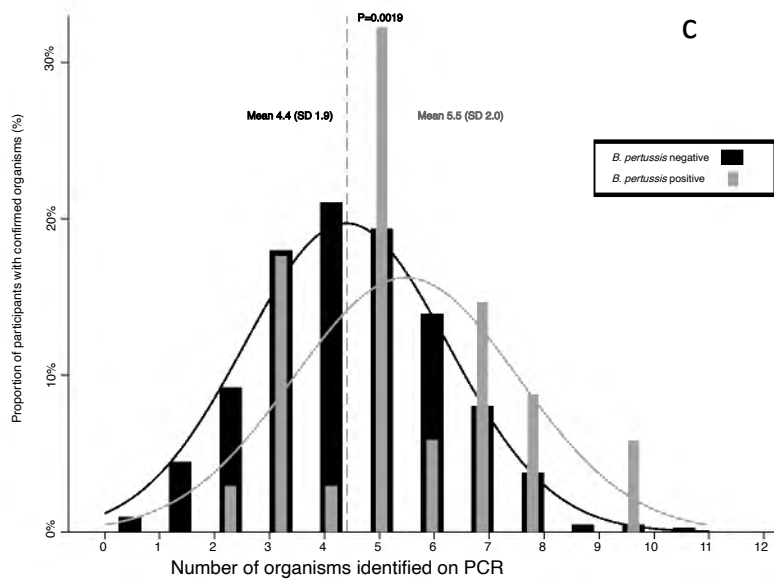
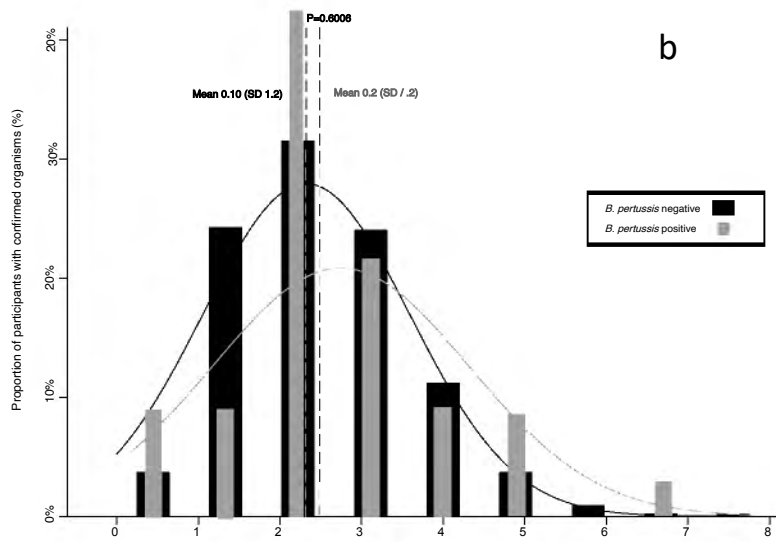
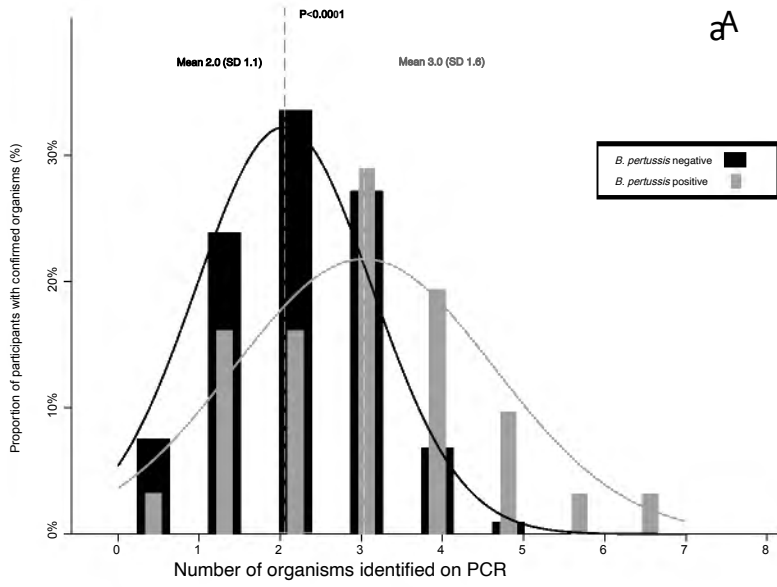


Figure 1. Distribution of number of bacteria (a), viruses (b) and bacteria + viruses (c) identified on polymerase chain reaction (PCR) in participants with and without *Bordetella pertussis*

250 The prevalence of specific organisms identified on IS in participants with and without  
 251 confirmed pertussis is shown in descending order of frequency in Table 2.

252

**Table 2: Association between *Bordetella pertussis* and other organisms isolated on IS (N=454)**

Pathogen <sup>¶</sup>	Total n (%)	<i>Bordetella pertussis</i> PCR n (%)		
		Positive n=31	Negative n=423	P value <sup>#</sup>
<b>Viral organisms</b>				
Cytomegalovirus	253 (55.7)	17 (54.8)	236 (55.8)	0.918
Rhinovirus	222 (48.9)	17 (54.8)	205 (48.5)	0.493
Respiratory Syncytial	135 (30.7)	5 (16.1)	130 (30.7)	<b>0.086</b>
Adenovirus	117 (25.8)	9 (29.0)	108 (25.5)	0.667
Bocavirus	80 (17.6)	8 (25.8)	72 (17.0)	0.215
Enterovirus-parechovirus	80 (17.6)	7 (22.6)	73 (17.3)	0.453
Parainfluenza (1,2,3 4)	75 (16.5)	9 (29.0)	66 (15.6)	<b>0.052</b>
Metapneumovirus A & B	45 (9.9)	1 (3.2)	44 (10.4)	0.345
Coronavirus	35 (7.7)	3 (9.7)	32 (7.6)	0.723
Influenza (A, B, C)	28 (6.2)	0 (0.0)	28 (6.6)	0.244
<b>Bacterial organisms</b>				
<i>Moraxella catarrhalis</i>	295 (65.0)	18 (58.1)	277 (65.5)	0.403
<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i>	240 (52.9)	17 (54.8)	223 (52.7)	0.819
<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	231 (50.9)	18 (58.1)	213 (50.4)	0.407
<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	136 (30.0)	9 (29.0)	127 (30.0)	0.907
<i>Haemophilus influenzae B</i>	16 (3.5)	2 (6.5)	14 (3.3)	0.299
<i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i>	10 (2.2)	3 (9.7)	7 (1.7)	<b>0.025</b>
<i>Chlamydia pneumoniae</i>	7 (1.2)	2 (6.5)	5 (1.2)	<b>0.076</b>
<b>Fungal organism</b>				
<i>Pneumocystis jirovecii</i>	98(21.6)	8 (25.8)	90 (21.3)	0.554

IS=induced sputum. # Two-sided Fisher's exact or Chi Square tests P-values; Bold Typeface = P < 0.1

¶ Organisms shown in descending order of total frequency for each pathogen group

253

### 254 Co-detection of *Bordetella pertussis* with specific organisms

255 Overall, *Moraxella catarrhalis* was the commonest bacterium identified with 295

256 (65.0%) samples testing PCR positive for the organism. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*

257 showed association with *B. pertussis* infection (P=0.025) while *Chlamydia*

258 *pneumoniae* displayed weak evidence of association with *B. pertussis* (P=0.076). No

259 other bacteria were significantly associated with confirmed pertussis. Table 2.

260 Cytomegalovirus was the commonest virus, identified in 253 (55.7%) of the

261 participants. Parainfluenza viruses (1, 2, 3 &4) were weakly associated (P=0.052)

262 with the presence of *B. pertussis*, while Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV) was

263 weakly associated with the absence of *B. pertussis* (p=0.086). The other viruses did  
 264 not show any association with *B. pertussis* infection. Table 2. *Pneumocystis jirovecii*  
 265 was detected in 8 (25.8%) and 98 (21.6%) of participants with and without confirmed  
 266 pertussis, respectively, P=0.554).

267

268 After adjusting for potential confounding, two bacterial pathogens, namely *C.*  
 269 *pneumoniae* (aRR 4.01 (95% CI 1.03-15.64) and *M. pneumoniae* (aRR 4.17 (95% CI  
 270 1.42-12.27) remained independently associated with confirmed *B. pertussis* infection.  
 271 Parainfluenza viruses (aRR 2.13 (95% CI 1.03-4.55) was the one group of viruses that  
 272 showed significant independent association with confirmed pertussis. Lack of strong  
 273 association between the absence of *B. pertussis* and RSV remained unchanged after  
 274 adjusting for potential confounding. Table 3.

275

**Table 3. Risk of lower respiratory co-infection in children with confirmed *Bordetella pertussis* infection**

Co-infection	<i>Bordetella pertussis</i> PCR n (%)		RR (95% Confidence interval)	
	Positive n=31	Negative n=423	Crude	Adjusted <sup>#</sup>
<i>Chlamydia pneumoniae</i>	2 (6.5)	5 (1.2)	<b>4.40 (1.29-14.98)</b>	<b>4.01 (1.03-15.64)</b>
<i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i>	3 (9.7)	7 (1.7)	<b>4.75 (1.73-13.11)</b>	<b>4.17 (1.42-12.27)</b>
Parainfluenza (1,2,3,4)	2 (6.5)	4 (1.0)	2.07 (0.99-4.31)	<b>2.13 (1.03-4.55)</b>
Respiratory syncytial virus	5 (16.1)	130 (30.7)	0.45 (0.18-1.16)	0.45 (0.17-1.20)

RR = Relative risk; <sup>#</sup> Multivariable model adjusted for age in months, sex and HIV status; confidence intervals not overlapping the null value of 1 are shown in bold typeface.

276

### 277 **Clinical presentation and outcome**

278

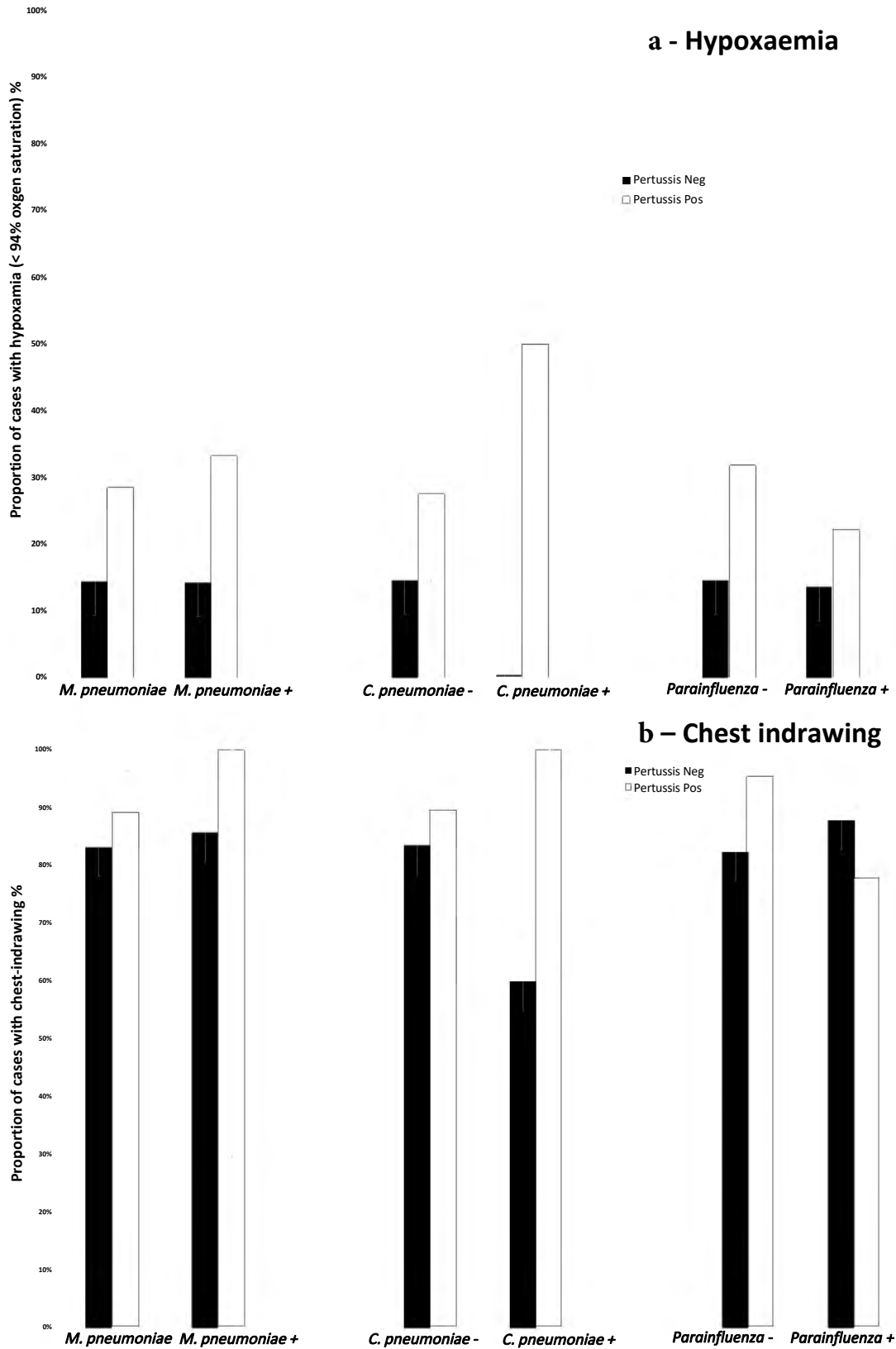
279 Only three (9.7%) of the 31 *B. pertussis* PCR positive cases were diagnosed clinically  
 280 with pertussis. All 454 participants were discharged from hospital with no in-hospital  
 281 deaths occurring in both the *B. pertussis* PCR positive and negative groups. Twelve  
 282 (2.4%) children required a High Dependency Unit or Paediatric Intensive Care Unit  
 283 admission; slightly higher frequency in children with confirmed *B. pertussis* with

284 two out of 31 (6.5%) and 10 out of 423 (2.4%) in the positive and negative groups  
285 respectively; P=0.194. Due to the small numbers, no further analysis was possible.  
286 Hypoxaemia as indicated by oxygen saturation of <94% was noted in 70 (15.4%)  
287 children while chest indrawing was noted in 380 (83.7%). In general, children with  
288 confirmed pertussis showed higher frequencies of chest indrawing with 28 (90.3%)  
289 out of 31 compared to 352 (83.2%) of the 423 (P=0.449) without pertussis.  
290 Similarly, there were 9 (29.0%) out of 31 compared to 61(14.4%) out of 423  
291 (P=0.039) showing hypoxaemia in children with and without *B. pertussis*,  
292 respectively.

293

294 The same pattern was noted with the two bacterial organisms whose detection was strongly  
295 associated with *B. pertussis*. Figure 2. A higher risk of severe disease was seen when *B.*  
296 *pertussis* was detected with each organism than when *B. pertussis* or each of the bacteria  
297 was detected on its own. No hypoxaemia was noted in any of the *C. pneumoniae* positive  
298 children who did not have *B. pertussis*. With parainfluenza viruses, this pattern was noted  
299 only with respect to hypoxaemia but not with chest indrawing. The small sample sizes of  
300 each stratum were not sufficient to allow for meaningful formal assessment of strength of  
301 association.

302



**Figure 2.** Proportion of children with hypoxaemia and chest indrawing by presence of co-detected organisms that were strongly associated with pertussis



304 The median length of hospital stay was similar in children with confirmed *B.*  
305 *pertussis* [2 (IQR 1- 5) days] and children testing negative [2 (IQR 1-4) days];  
306 P=0.522. The co-detection of organisms independently associated with pertussis  
307 did not have an effect on the length of hospital stay.

308

### 309 **Discussion**

310 This study demonstrates a high prevalence of bacteria and viruses involved in LRTI in  
311 children requiring hospitalisation for severe disease. The study also shows that only a  
312 few of these organisms are specifically associated with *B. pertussis* co-detection. The  
313 detection of *B. pertussis* was however strongly associated with a higher number of co-  
314 detected potential respiratory pathogens, specifically bacterial organisms. Although  
315 most of the studied potential respiratory pathogens did not show association with the  
316 presence of *B. pertussis*, three, namely *C. pneumoniae*, *M. pneumoniae* and  
317 parainfluenza viruses, were independently associated with being co-detected with *B.*  
318 *pertussis*. In addition, the study shows some evidence, albeit weak, that the co-  
319 detection of *B. pertussis*, together with these three organisms may be a risk for severe  
320 illness.

321

322 The finding of other pathogens in a respiratory tract specimen together with *B.*  
323 *pertussis* is not by itself remarkable. As noted earlier, several studies have shown that  
324 multiple potential pathogens are frequently identified from children with respiratory  
325 infections, including pertussis.[4, 23] What is of interest, however, is the finding of  
326 higher numbers of potential pathogens, in particular bacterial, significantly associated  
327 with the presence of confirmed *B. pertussis*; and the association of specific organisms  
328 with confirmed *B. pertussis*.

329

330 Participants with *B. pertussis* had more organisms detected in their sputum samples,  
331 compared to those without. This association was significant for bacterial pathogens, a  
332 finding which had an impact also on association with overall total number of all  
333 detected organisms. In addition, patients with *B. pertussis* had a fourfold increase in  
334 the risk for detection of either *C. pneumoniae* or *M. pneumoniae*, as well as twice the  
335 risk to detect parainfluenza viruses.

336

337 In this study, although the number of viruses associated with *B. pertussis* was  
338 marginally higher, this finding was not of statistical significance. This is in keeping  
339 with findings of other studies that show little association between *B. pertussis* and  
340 viral infections.[24] Specifically, our study showed a negative correlation between *B.*  
341 *pertussis* and *RSV* although this finding was also not of statistical significance. This  
342 pattern was however in keeping with published literature where a negative association  
343 was noted between *RSV* and pertussis or between pertussis and bronchiolitis, a disease  
344 mainly attributable to *RSV*.[25, 26] We did however, find independent association  
345 between detection of parainfluenza viruses and the presence of *B. pertussis*.

346

347 Children with pertussis generally showed more severe clinical illness (hypoxaemia,  
348 chest-indrawing and need for high dependency care). Although these findings were  
349 not all statistically significant due to the small numbers, the pattern was consistent.

350 Children who had both strongly associated organisms and *B. pertussis* detected  
351 showed additional risk of severe disease, again without statistical significance. It is of  
352 note that the three organisms independently associated with *B. pertussis* are associated  
353 with 'atypical' or interstitial pneumonia which commonly presents with impaired  
354 oxygenation. There was no difference in mortality (study registered no deaths) and

355 length of hospital stay.

356

357 There is evidence associating *B. pertussis* with pneumonia in children. [4] Although  
358 the first vaccine specifically targeting pneumonia was only introduced with the  
359 registration of a vaccine against *Haemophilus influenzae b* in 1985, the decline in  
360 pneumonia-associated mortality in the United States was noted three decades  
361 earlier.[27] This decline can not be fully explained by the improvement in quality of  
362 health care alone, and may in part be explained by the rapid decline in reported  
363 pertussis cases following the introduction of DPT in the 1940s. The decline in  
364 pneumonia-associated mortality mirrors that of pertussis over the period.

365

366 Due to the small sample size, our study was limited both in exploring the effect of  
367 other factors such as HIV infection and in its ability to establish strong evidence for  
368 some associations, even where patterns suggested a correlation. In some instances, in  
369 which strong association was demonstrated, the precision of the estimated risk was  
370 low due to the same limited sample size. In addition, the study is limited only to the  
371 organisms included in the multiplex PCR, noting also that distinguishing between  
372 benign colonisation and pathological infection from PCR detection of an organism in  
373 the respiratory tract remains a challenge. [3] As such these findings must be  
374 interpreted with caution.

375

376 Further well powered studies or creative metanalytical systematic reviews are  
377 required, to study this phenomenon further.

378

379 Partial and waning immunity, especially in individuals vaccinated with acellular

380 pertussis (aP) vaccines, has been shown to lead to pertussis not presenting in a  
381 classical manner.[28-30] This atypical nature of presentation may lead to the  
382 diagnosis being missed unless a high index of suspicion is maintained. South Africa,  
383 where this study was conducted, changed from wP to aP containing vaccines in early  
384 2009. [19]

385

386 Less than 10% of children with confirmed *B. pertussis* in this study were clinically  
387 suspected of having possible pertussis, which highlights the need for laboratory  
388 support in the diagnosis of the disease. Where the diagnosis needs confirmation, the  
389 use of an additional IS specimen seems to improve detection rates.[4, 15]

390

391 As we have shown previously, isolation of *B. pertussis* in this cohort of children was  
392 strongly associated with incomplete primary vaccination.[15] Improving vaccine  
393 coverage for pertussis remains the most affordable and effective tool to decrease the  
394 incidence of pertussis, and indirectly that of severe LRTI due to associated pathogens.

395

396

### 397 **Acknowledgements**

398 We would like to acknowledge the participants, laboratory personnel and study  
399 staff for their immense contribution. The authors acknowledge financial support to  
400 their institution by Sanofi Pasteur for the submitted work. HZ is supported by the  
401 South African Medical Research Council.

### 402 **Author contribution statement**

403 RM conceptualised and designed the study with the input from GDH and HJZ. FSD  
404 was responsible for the laboratory aspect of the study under the supervision of MPN.  
405 RM did the data analysis. All authors were involved in the overall interpretation of  
406 the data. RM drafted the initial manuscript and updated it following inputs from all  
407 the authors. All authors reviewed and approved the final manuscript.

408 **Competing interests statement**

409 The authors declare no competing interests.

410

411 **Data availability**

412 All data analysed during the current study have been presented in this manuscript, but

413 the corresponding datasets generated are available from the corresponding authors on

414 reasonable request.

415

416

417

**References**

418

- 419 1. World Health Organisation. Disease burden and mortality estimates. Available from:  
420 [https://www.who.int/healthinfo/global\\_burden\\_disease/estimates/en/](https://www.who.int/healthinfo/global_burden_disease/estimates/en/).
- 421 2. Brealey JC, Sly PD, Young PR, Chappell KJ. Viral bacterial co-infection of the  
422 respiratory tract during early childhood. FEMS microbiology letters. 2015;362(10).  
423 Epub 2015/04/17. doi: 10.1093/femsle/fnv062.
- 424 3. Hammitt LL, Kazungu S, Morpeth SC, Gibson DG, Mvera B, Brent AJ, et al. A  
425 preliminary study of pneumonia etiology among hospitalized children in Kenya.  
426 Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society  
427 of America. 2012;54 Suppl 2:S190-9. Epub 2012/03/21. doi: 10.1093/cid/cir1071.
- 428 4. Zar HJ, Barnett W, Stadler A, Gardner-Lubbe S, Myer L, Nicol MP. Aetiology of  
429 childhood pneumonia in a well vaccinated South African birth cohort: a nested case-  
430 control study of the Drakenstein Child Health Study. Lancet Respir Med. 2016. doi:  
431 10.1016/S2213-2600(16)00096-5.
- 432 5. Pneumonia Etiology Research for Child Health Study G. Causes of severe pneumonia  
433 requiring hospital admission in children without HIV infection from Africa and Asia:  
434 the PERCH multi-country case-control study. Lancet. 2019;394(10200):757-79.
- 435 6. World Health Organisation. Immunization, Vaccines and Biologicals [1 August  
436 2017]. Available from: [http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring\\_surveillance/data/en/](http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/data/en/).
- 437 7. Wood N, McIntyre P. Pertussis: review of epidemiology, diagnosis, management and  
438 prevention. Paediatr Respir Rev. 2008;9(3):201-11; quiz 11-2.
- 439 8. Crowcroft NS, Stein C, Duclos P, Birmingham M. How best to estimate the global  
440 burden of pertussis? Lancet Infect Dis. 2003;3(7):413-8. Epub 2003/07/03.
- 441 9. Melvin JA, Bomberger JM. Compromised Defenses: Exploitation of Epithelial  
442 Responses During Viral-Bacterial Co-Infection of the Respiratory Tract. PLoS  
443 pathogens. 2016;12(9):e1005797. Epub 2016/09/16. doi:  
444 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005797.
- 445 10. Hallander HO, Gnarp J, Gnarp H, Olin P. Bordetella pertussis, Bordetella  
446 parapertussis, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Chlamydia pneumoniae and persistent  
447 cough in children. Scandinavian journal of infectious diseases. 1999;31(3):281-6.
- 448 11. Jackson LA, Cherry JD, Wang SP, Grayston JT. Frequency of serological evidence of  
449 Bordetella infections and mixed infections with other respiratory pathogens in  
450 university students with cough illnesses. Clinical infectious diseases : an official  
451 publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. 2000;31(1):3-6.

- 452 12. Luis BAL, Guerrero Almeida ML, Ruiz-Palacios GM. A place for *Bordetella*  
453 *pertussis* in PCR-based diagnosis of community-acquired pneumonia. *Infect Dis*  
454 (Lond). 2017;1-4. Epub 2017/09/30. doi: 10.1080/23744235.2017.1384958.
- 455 13. Mooi FR. Virulence factors of *Bordetella pertussis*. *Antonie van Leeuwenhoek*.  
456 1988;54(5):465-74. Epub 1988/01/01.
- 457 14. Melvin JA, Scheller EV, Miller JF, Cotter PA. *Bordetella pertussis* pathogenesis:  
458 current and future challenges. *Nature reviews Microbiology*. 2014;12(4):274-88.
- 459 15. Muloiwa R, Dube FS, Nicol MP, Zar HJ, Hussey GD. Incidence and Diagnosis of  
460 *Pertussis* in South African Children Hospitalized With Lower Respiratory Tract  
461 Infection. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2016;35(6):611-6.
- 462 16. Balasubramanian S, Suresh N, Ravichandran C, Dinesh Chand GH. Reference values  
463 for oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry in healthy children at sea level in Chennai.  
464 *Ann Trop Paediatr*. 2006;26(2):95-9.
- 465 17. Mau MK, Yamasato KS, Yamamoto LG. Normal oxygen saturation values in  
466 pediatric patients. *Hawaii Med J*. 2005;64(2):42, 4-5. Epub 2005/05/06.
- 467 18. Langley R, Cunningham S. How Should Oxygen Supplementation Be Guided by  
468 Pulse Oximetry in Children: Do We Know the Level? *Front Pediatr*. 2016;4:138.  
469 Epub 2017/02/14. doi: 10.3389/fped.2016.00138.
- 470 19. Ngcobo NJ. New EPI vaccines guidelines. Pretoria, South Africa: National  
471 Department of Health; 2010. p. 1-15.
- 472 20. Planting NS, Visser GL, Nicol MP, Workman L, Isaacs W, Zar HJ. Safety and  
473 efficacy of induced sputum in young children hospitalised with suspected pulmonary  
474 tuberculosis. *The international journal of tuberculosis and lung disease : the official*  
475 *journal of the International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease*.  
476 2014;18(1):8-12. Epub 2013/12/25. doi: 10.5588/ijtld.13.0132.
- 477 21. Farrell DJ, Daggard G, Mukkur TK. Nested duplex PCR to detect *Bordetella pertussis*  
478 and *Bordetella parapertussis* and its application in diagnosis of pertussis in  
479 nonmetropolitan Southeast Queensland, Australia. *J Clin Microbiol*. 1999;37(3):606-  
480 10. Epub 1999/02/13.
- 481 22. Tatti KM, Sparks KN, Boney KO, Tondella ML. Novel multitarget real-time PCR  
482 assay for rapid detection of *Bordetella* species in clinical specimens. *J Clin Microbiol*.  
483 2011;49(12):4059-66. Epub 2011/09/24. doi: 10.1128/jcm.00601-11.
- 484 23. Versteegh FG, Mooi-Kokenberg EA, Schellekens JF, Roord JJ. *Bordetella pertussis*  
485 and mixed infections. *Minerva pediatrica*. 2006;58(2):131-7. Epub 2006/07/13.
- 486 24. Heininger U, Burckhardt MA. *Bordetella pertussis* and concomitant viral respiratory  
487 tract infections are rare in children with cough illness. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*.  
488 2011;30(8):640-4. doi: 10.1097/INF.0b013e3182152d28.
- 489 25. Piedra PA, Mansbach JM, Jewell AM, Thakar SD, Grant CC, Sullivan AF, et al.  
490 *Bordetella pertussis* is an uncommon pathogen in children hospitalized with  
491 bronchiolitis during the winter season. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2015;34(6):566-70.
- 492 26. Siberry GK, Paquette NR, Ross TL, Perl TM, Valsamakis A. Low prevalence of  
493 pertussis among children admitted with respiratory symptoms during respiratory  
494 syncytial virus season. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2006;27(1):95-7.
- 495 27. Armstrong GL, Conn LA, Pinner RW. Trends in infectious disease mortality in the  
496 United States during the 20th century. *JAMA*. 1999;281(1):61-6. Epub 1999/01/19.
- 497 28. Mills KHG, Gerdt V. Mouse and Pig Models for Studies of Natural and Vaccine-  
498 Induced Immunity to *Bordetella pertussis*. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*.  
499 2014;209(suppl 1):S16-S9. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jit488.
- 500 29. Ross PJ, Sutton CE, Higgins S, Allen AC, Walsh K, Misiak A, et al. Relative  
501 contribution of Th1 and Th17 cells in adaptive immunity to *Bordetella pertussis*:  
502 towards the rational design of an improved acellular pertussis vaccine. *PLoS*  
503 *pathogens*. 2013;9(4):e1003264. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003264.
- 504 30. Crowcroft NS, Pebody RG. Recent developments in pertussis. *Lancet*.  
505 2006;367(9526):1926-36.
- 506

## Chapter 6

### 1 **Diagnostic limitations of clinical case definitions of pertussis in infants and** 2 **children with severe lower respiratory tract infection**

3

#### 4 **Limited diagnostic accuracy of pertussis clinical case definitions**

5

6 Rudzani Muloiwa<sup>1\*</sup>, Mark P. Nicol<sup>2,3</sup>, Gregory D Hussey<sup>4,5</sup>, Heather J. Zar<sup>6,7</sup>

7

8

9 <sup>1</sup> Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Groote Schuur Hospital, University of Cape Town, South

10 Africa

11 <sup>2</sup> Division of Medical Microbiology, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Cape Town, South Africa

12 <sup>3</sup> Division of Infection and Immunity, School of Biomedical Sciences, University of Western Australia

13 <sup>4</sup> Institute of Infectious Disease & Molecular Medicine, University of Cape Town, South Africa

14 <sup>5</sup> Vaccines for Africa Initiative, Division of Medical Microbiology, University of Cape Town, South

15 Africa

16 <sup>6</sup> SA-MRC unit on Child & Adolescent Lung Health, University of Cape Town, Cape Town, South Africa

17 <sup>7</sup> Department of Paediatrics & Child Health, Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital, University  
18 of Cape Town, South Africa,

19

20

21

22 **\*Corresponding author (RM)**

23 E-mail: Rudzani.Muloiwa@uct.ac.za

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31 **Abstract**

32

33 **Introduction:** Diagnosis of pertussis is challenging especially in infants. Most  
34 low and middle-income countries (LMIC) lack resources for laboratory confirmation,  
35 relying largely on clinical diagnosis alone for both case management and surveillance.  
36 This necessitates robust clinical case definitions.

37 **Objectives:** This study assesses the accuracy of clinical case definitions with and  
38 without lymphocytosis in diagnosing pertussis in children with severe lower  
39 respiratory tract infection (LRTI) in a LMIC setting.

40 **Methods:** Children hospitalised with severe LRTI in a South African hospital were  
41 prospectively enrolled and evaluated for pertussis using PCR on respiratory  
42 samples. Clinical signs and differential white cell counts were recorded.  
43 Sensitivity and specificity of pertussis clinical diagnosis using WHO and Global  
44 Pertussis Initiative (GPI) criteria; and with addition of lymphocytosis were  
45 assessed with PCR as the reference standard.

46 **Results:** 458 children <10 years were enrolled. *Bordetella pertussis* infection was  
47 confirmed in 32 (7.0%). For WHO criteria, sensitivity was 78.1% (95% CI 60.7–  
48 89.2%) and specificity 15.5% (95% CI 12.4 –19.3%); for GPI sensitivity was 34.4%  
49 (95% CI 20.1– 52.1) and specificity 64.8% (95% CI 60.1 – 69.2%). Area under the  
50 curve (AUC) on receiver operating character (ROC) analysis was 0.58 (95% CI 0.46-  
51 0.70 for WHO criteria, and 0.72 (95% CI 0.56-0.88) for GPI with highest likelihood  
52 ratios of 5.33 and 4.42 respectively. Diagnostic accuracy was highest between five and  
53 seven days of symptoms for both criteria. Lymphocytosis had sensitivity of 31.3%  
54 (95% CI 17.5 - 49.3%) and specificity of 70.7% (95% CI 66.1-74.8%) and showed a  
55 marginal impact on improving clinical criteria.



56 **Conclusion:** Clinical criteria lack accuracy for diagnosis and surveillance of  
57 pertussis. Non-outbreak settings should consider shorter durations in clinical  
58 criteria. New recommendations still fall short of what is required for a viable  
59 clinical screening test which means the need to improve access to laboratory  
60 diagnostic support remains crucial.

61

## 62 **Introduction**

63

64 Pertussis has resurged globally over the last decade. Waning immunity change in  
65 primary schedule to acellular vaccines and improvement in diagnostics have been  
66 given as possible explanations. [1, 2] A large proportion of reported cases have not  
67 shown the classic presentation of a prolonged spasmodic cough with inspiratory  
68 whoop and post tussive vomiting.[3] In response, some high income countries (HICs)  
69 have modified their case definitions to suit local diagnostic and surveillance criteria;  
70 usually this includes reducing duration of cough symptoms to lower than the two  
71 weeks historically recommended as the minimum cut-off time.[4]

72

73 The World Health Organization (WHO) developed criteria for clinically defining  
74 cases of pertussis. These include presence of a cough for at least 14 days  
75 characterized by one of paroxysms, inspiratory whoop or post-tussive vomiting, table  
76 1.[5] Apart from reduction by a week in the duration of cough from more than 21  
77 days, very little has changed over the last three decades in the WHO case definition of  
78 pertussis.[6]

79

80 Acknowledging shortcomings of WHO clinical case definition, the Global Pertussis

81 Initiative (GPI), following a Roundtable discussion in 2010, recommended changes to  
 82 improve diagnostic sensitivity and specificity for pertussis. In addition to clinical  
 83 features found in WHO criteria, the GPI suggests adding presence of coryza, apnoea,  
 84 seizures or cyanosis as well as absence of fever, and shortens duration of symptoms to  
 85 7 days. GPI clinical features vary by age categories: less than four months of age, four  
 86 months to nine years and 10 years and above, table 1.[4]

**Table 1: Clinical features for diagnosis of pertussis cases**

<u>World Health Organization</u>	<u>Global Pertussis Initiative</u>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A case diagnosed as pertussis by a physician, <b>OR</b></li> <li>▪ A person with a cough lasting <math>\geq 2</math> weeks with <math>\geq 1</math> of the following: symptoms:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paroxysms (i.e., fits) of coughing</li> <li>• Inspiratory “whooping”</li> <li>• Post-tussive vomiting (i.e., vomiting immediately after coughing) without other apparent cause</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<b>0 – 3 months</b>	<b>4 months to 9 years</b>
	Cough and coryza <b>PLUS</b> any of	Paroxysmal cough <b>PLUS</b> any of
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whoop</li> <li>• Apnoea</li> <li>• Post-tussive emesis</li> <li>• Cyanosis</li> <li>• Seizure</li> <li>• Pneumonia</li> <li>• Close exposure to an adolescent or adult (usually a family member) with a prolonged afebrile cough illness</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whoop</li> <li>• Apnoea</li> <li>• Post-tussive emesis</li> <li>• Worsening of symptoms at night</li> <li>• Seizure</li> <li>• Pneumonia</li> <li>• Close exposure to an adolescent or adult (usually a family member) with a prolonged afebrile cough illness</li> </ul>

Adapted from World Health Organization & Cherry et al (2012)[4, 5] **NB.** Global Pertussis Initiative criteria for individuals older than 9 years not shown

87  
 88 Although culture, ELISA and direct fluorescent antigen testing can all be used to  
 89 confirm pertussis, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) has gained favour as the most  
 90 practical confirmatory method with an acceptable level of sensitivity and  
 91 specificity.[7, 8] In contrast to HICs which have access to laboratory resources to  
 92 validate clinical suspicion, most low and middle-income countries (LMICs) lack  
 93 resources for laboratory confirmation, relying largely on clinical diagnosis alone.[9] It  
 94 is therefore imperative to have a robust clinical definition in these settings.  
 95  
 96 Pertussis is commonly associated with leukocytosis, with an increase in lymphocytes.  
 97 [10] In the absence of resources for confirming pertussis, clinicians have also used

98 lymphocytosis to support a clinical diagnosis.[11]

99

100 Here we investigate the sensitivity and specificity of clinical criteria recommended by  
101 WHO and GPI to diagnose pertussis with PCR as the diagnostic reference standard, in  
102 a LMIC. The analysis includes assessment of the impact of duration of symptoms on  
103 sensitivity and specificity for both sets of diagnostic criteria. Secondly, we assess  
104 the impact of adding lymphocytosis to clinical criteria to improve diagnostic  
105 accuracy. WHO criteria were selected as they represent the reference criteria used by  
106 most countries and they also form the basis for pertussis clinical criteria adopted with  
107 some amendments by most national health administrations. The GPI was used as a  
108 comparator as it represents the most radical proposal to changes to the WHO criteria  
109 independent of national context.

110

## 111 **Materials and Methods**

112

113 A prospective study was conducted from September 2012 to September 2013, to  
114 investigate the incidence of pertussis in children hospitalised for severe lower  
115 respiratory tract infection (LRTI), or with apnoea, at a tertiary hospital in South  
116 Africa. Children were included if they presented with WHO defined severe LRTI or  
117 apnoea and had not been in touch with the health care services in the preceding two  
118 weeks after written informed consent was received from the parent or legal guardian.  
119 A nasopharyngeal swab and an induced sputum specimen were taken from each child  
120 and sent to the laboratory for culture and pertussis PCR.

121

122 The duration and character of cough, especially presence of paroxysms, inspiratory

123 whoop, or post-tussive vomiting; as well as presence of apnoea, cyanosis, seizures  
124 and fever were recorded. In addition, any prior exposure to antibiotics including  
125 macrolides and cotrimoxazole were noted.

126

127 A blood cell count was done including white cell count with a differential. An  
128 absolute count of more than 9000 cells/ $\mu$ L or 7000 cells/ $\mu$ L was used to define  
129 lymphocytosis in infancy or in children 12 months and older respectively, according  
130 to local laboratory guidelines.

131

### 132 **Pertussis PCR**

133 PCR targeting the IS481 common *Bordetella* insertion site and IS1001 for *Bordetella*  
134 *parapertussis* was done after which specimens testing positive for the former were  
135 further tested with PCR for hIS1001 to exclude *Bordetella holmesii* which shares the  
136 same IS481 insertion site. IS481+/hIS1001- samples were classified as confirmed  
137 *Bordetella pertussis* infection. The methods and epidemiological findings of this  
138 study have been published elsewhere.[12] Only assessment of *Bordetella pertussis*  
139 was included in the current analysis to allow for comparison with other studies.

140

### 141 **Analysis of data**

142

143 Data were analysed using STATA statistical package version 14 (StataCorp, College  
144 Street, Texas).

145

146 Proportions were summarized as percentages with a 95% interval of confidence, as  
147 indicated. Age in months and duration of symptoms in days were summarized using

148 medians and interquartile ranges.

149

150 The Wilcoxon rank sum test was used to test the difference between continuous  
151 variables while the  $\chi^2$  or Fisher's exact tests were used to compare proportions of  
152 categorical variables as appropriate. Where hypothesis testing was undertaken the P-  
153 value was set at a two-tailed  $p < 0.05$  as a cut-off point of statistical significance  
154 Proportions of cases conforming to positive and negative clinical case definitions  
155 were compared with PCR, the reference standard, to respectively estimate sensitivity  
156 and specificity of using clinical signs in the diagnosis of pertussis. Clinical features,  
157 chosen to conform to WHO and GPI recommendations (Table 1), were assessed with  
158 and without taking duration of symptoms into consideration in this analysis.

159

160 As our sample did not include older individuals, the analysis was restricted to children  
161 less than 10 years of age who presented with respiratory illness and underwent  
162 confirmatory diagnostic testing for pertussis.

163

164 Although GPI criteria do not include duration, for comparison, both WHO and GPI  
165 criteria were additionally assessed for sensitivity and specificity at different durations  
166 of symptoms. A receiver operating character (ROC) analysis was done to determine  
167 area under the curve (AUC) with PCR as diagnostic reference standard. Finally, the  
168 utility of adding lymphocytosis to WHO and GPI criteria was analysed.

169

170 Our data allowed us to stratify analysis to reflect only two of the GPI suggested age  
171 groups: below four months of age and four months to nine years of age.

172

173 **Results**

174

175 Four hundred and fifty-eight children were enrolled with a median age of 8 (IQR 4-  
 176 17) months; 132 (28.8%) were younger than 4 months of age. HIV infection was  
 177 confirmed in 19 (4.2%) while 92 (20.1%) were exposed to HIV in utero but tested  
 178 negative for HIV infection. Forty-five children (9.8%) were classified as moderately  
 179 to severely malnourished using WHO criteria. Table 2.

**Table 2: Baseline characteristics of study participants (N=458)**

	n (%)
<b>PCR confirmed cases</b>	32 (7.0)
<b>Lymphocytosis</b>	135 (29.5)
<b>Age group</b>	
0 - 3 months	132 (28.8)
4 months – 9 years	372 (71.2)
<b>Sex</b>	
Female	200 (43.7)
<b>Pertussis vaccine doses</b>	
0	28 (6.1)
1	57 (12.4)
2	58 (12.6)
≥ 3	308 (67.2)
Unknown	7 (1.5)
<b>HIV status</b>	
Infected	19 (4.1)
Exposed uninfected	92 (20.1)
<b>Nutritional status</b>	
Moderate-severe malnutrition#	45 (9.8)
<b>Macrolide/cotrimoxazole in preceding week</b>	5 (1.1)

PCR= polymerase chain reaction, # As per World Health Organization criteria of weight for age Z score less than -2

180

181 A total of 32 (7.0%, 95% CI 4.8 – 9.7%) cases were confirmed to have *Bordetella*  
 182 *pertussis* on PCR, including 13 (9.9%) of the 132 infants younger than four months  
 183 and 19 (5.8%) of 326 in the older age group. One of the PCR confirmed cases was  
 184 also positive on culture. Lymphocytosis was found in 135 (29.5%) of which the two

185 age groups had 33/132 (25.0%) and 102/326 (31.3%) respectively. Clinical features of  
 186 PCR positive and negative cases were similar across age groups, table 2. Only 3 (9%)  
 187 of the 32 PCR positive participants were suspected to have pertussis by the attending  
 188 clinicians while 12 (2%) of the PCR negative participants were diagnosed with  
 189 pertussis; P=0.079.

190

191 The median duration of symptoms was 3 (IQR 2-5) days. Paroxysmal cough was  
 192 reported as a presenting feature in 398 (69.9%) children; similar in confirmed  
 193 pertussis cases and those with negative PCR under four months of age with 8/13 (61.5  
 194 %) and 79/119 (66.4%) respectively; p=0.726. Similarly, paroxysmal cough was  
 195 found in 15/19 (79.0%) participants four months to nine years old with confirmed  
 196 pertussis compared to 218/326 (71.0%) with negative PCR; P=0.837. The other  
 197 presenting clinical features are shown in Table 3.

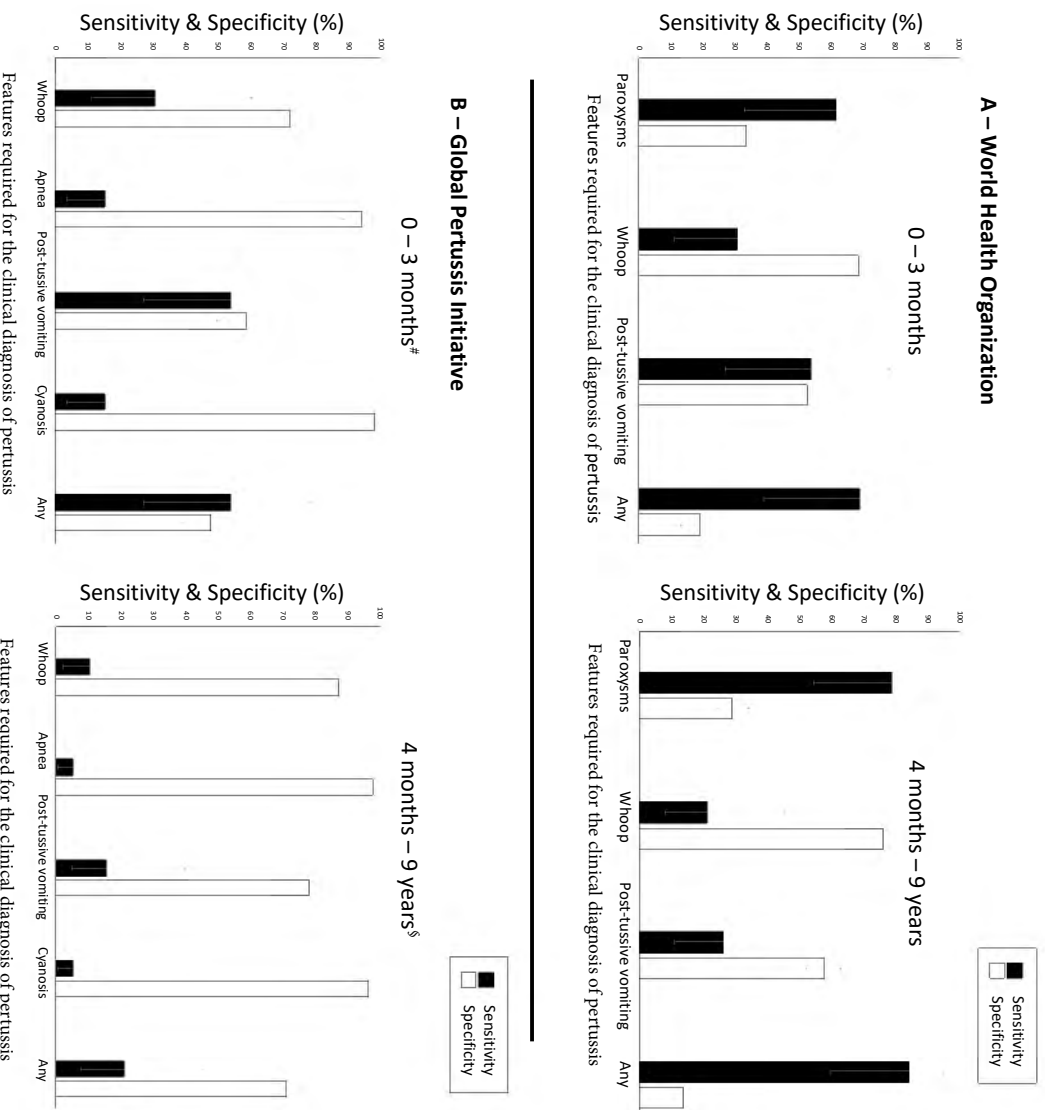
198

**Table 3: Clinical presentation of children by *Bordetella pertussis* PCR status N=458**

	Clinical Feature	PCR+[n (%)]	PCR- [n (%)]	P Value
0 - 3 months		<b>n=13</b>	<b>n=119</b>	
	Paroxysmal cough	8(61.5)	79(66.4)	0.726
	Whoop	4(30.8)	37(31.1)	1.000
	Apnoea	2(15.4)	7(5.9)	0.217
	Post-tussive emesis	7(53.9)	56(47.1)	0.642
	Cyanosis	2(15.4)	3(2.5)	0.076
	Seizure	0(0.0)	1(0.8)	1.000
	Pneumonia	5(38.5)	35(29.4)	0.532
	Absence of fever	3(23.1)	33(27.7)	1.000
4 months - 9 years		<b>n=19</b>	<b>n=307</b>	
	Paroxysmal cough	15(79.0)	218(71.0)	0.457
	Whoop	4(21.1)	73(23.8)	1.000
	Apnoea	1(5.3)	10(3.3)	0.489
	Post-tussive emesis	5(26.3)	130(43.4)	0.169
	Seizure	2(10.5)	6(2.0)	0.073
	Night cough	15(79.0)	239(78.0)	1.000
	Pneumonia	6(31.6)	109(35.5)	0.728
	Absence of fever	5(26.3)	142(46.3)	0.090

PCR= polymerase chain reaction

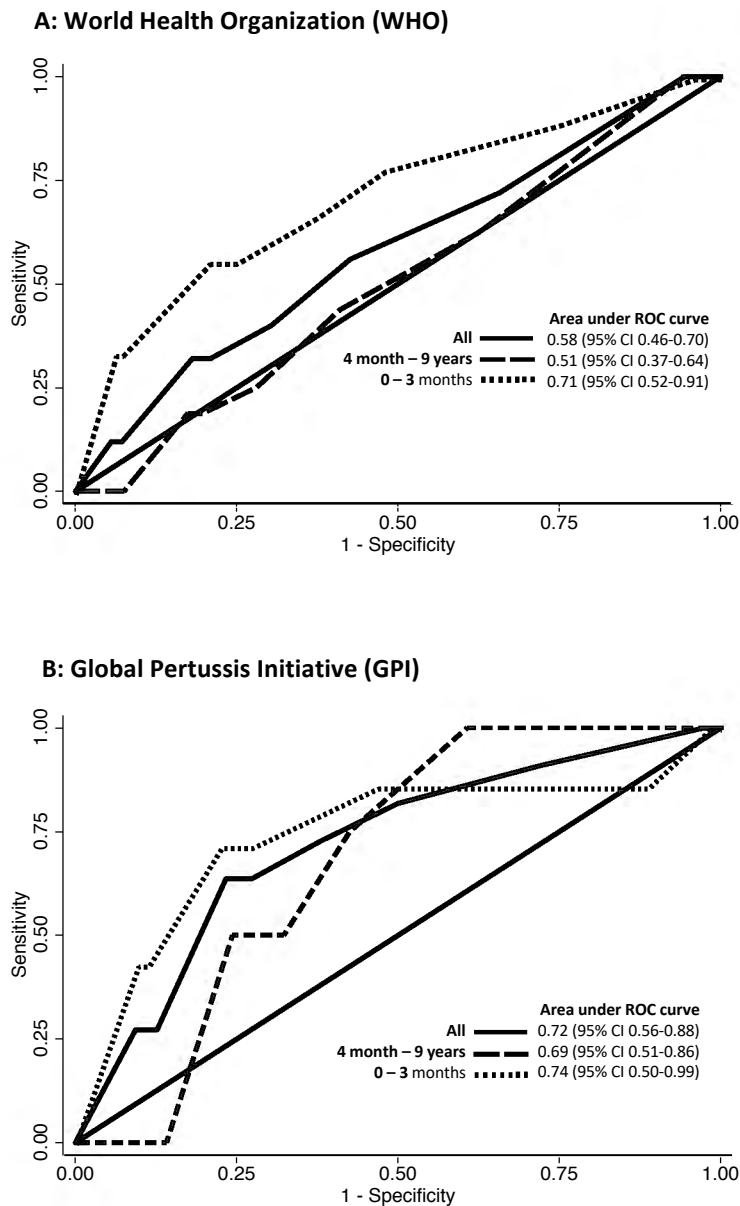
199 Of the clinical features recommended by WHO for diagnosing pertussis, presence of  
 200 paroxysms had the highest sensitivity (61.5% 0 to 3 months and 78.9% 4 months to 9  
 201 years, respectively) while inspiratory whoop gave the highest specificity (68.9% % 0  
 202 to 3 months and 76.2% 4 months to 9 years, respectively) of any single feature on its  
 203 own, figure 1. Overall, when the whole group was considered, the use of any feature  
 204 suggested by WHO had sensitivity of 78.1% (95% CI 60.7– 89.2%) while GPI  
 205 suggested clinical features had sensitivity of 34.4% (95% CI 20.1– 52.1%).  
 206 Specificity was 15.5% (95% CI 12.4–19.3%) and 64.8% (95% CI 60.1– 69.2%) for  
 207 WHO and GPI, respectively. Figure 1.



209 **Figure 1. Sensitivity and specificity of clinical features in the diagnosis of pertussis**



210 When ROC analysis was undertaken on duration of symptoms, GPI recommended  
 211 features had AUC of 0.72 (95% CI 0.56-0.88) while those suggested by WHO had  
 212 AUC of 0.58 (95% CI 0.46-0.70). The AUC was greater in younger infants than in the  
 213 older age group for both WHO and GPI criteria. Figure 2.



214

215 **Figure 2. Receiver operating characteristics (ROC) curves for duration of symptoms**

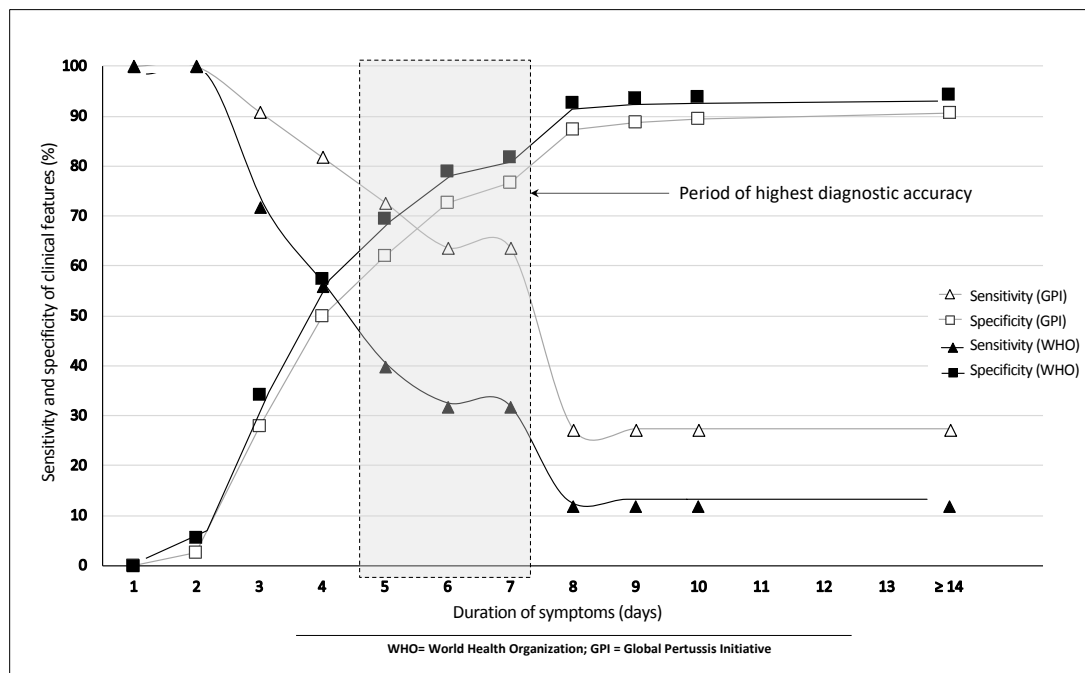
216

217

218 Specificity increased for both WHO and GPI criteria as duration of symptoms

219 increased while the opposite was seen with sensitivity declining with duration. The

220 decline in sensitivity occurred earlier and steeper when using WHO clinical criteria  
 221 than when GPI criteria were utilized. Sensitivity was 12.0% and 27.3% at  $\geq 14$ -day  
 222 duration for WHO and GPI criteria respectively, while specificity was 94.0% and  
 223 90.7% respectively for WHO and GPI criteria at a similar duration cut-off.  
 224 In general, sensitivity declined, and specificity increased with increase in duration of  
 225 symptoms. When any symptom was considered, the highest combination of sensitivity  
 226 and specificity with the use of GPI clinical features was seen between five and seven  
 227 days with sensitivity ranging between 63.6% and 72.7% and specificity ranging  
 228 between 62.0% and 76.7%. Criteria recommended by WHO showed their highest  
 229 combination of sensitivity and specificity between three and five days duration of  
 230 symptoms with sensitivity ranging between 40.0% and 72.0%, and specificity ranging  
 231 between 34.3% and 69.6%. Figure 3. The highest likelihood ratio for sensitivity was  
 232 seen in the young infant group. This ranged between 1.00 and 5.33 using WHO based  
 233 criteria and between 0.96 and 4.42 when GPI based criteria were applied.

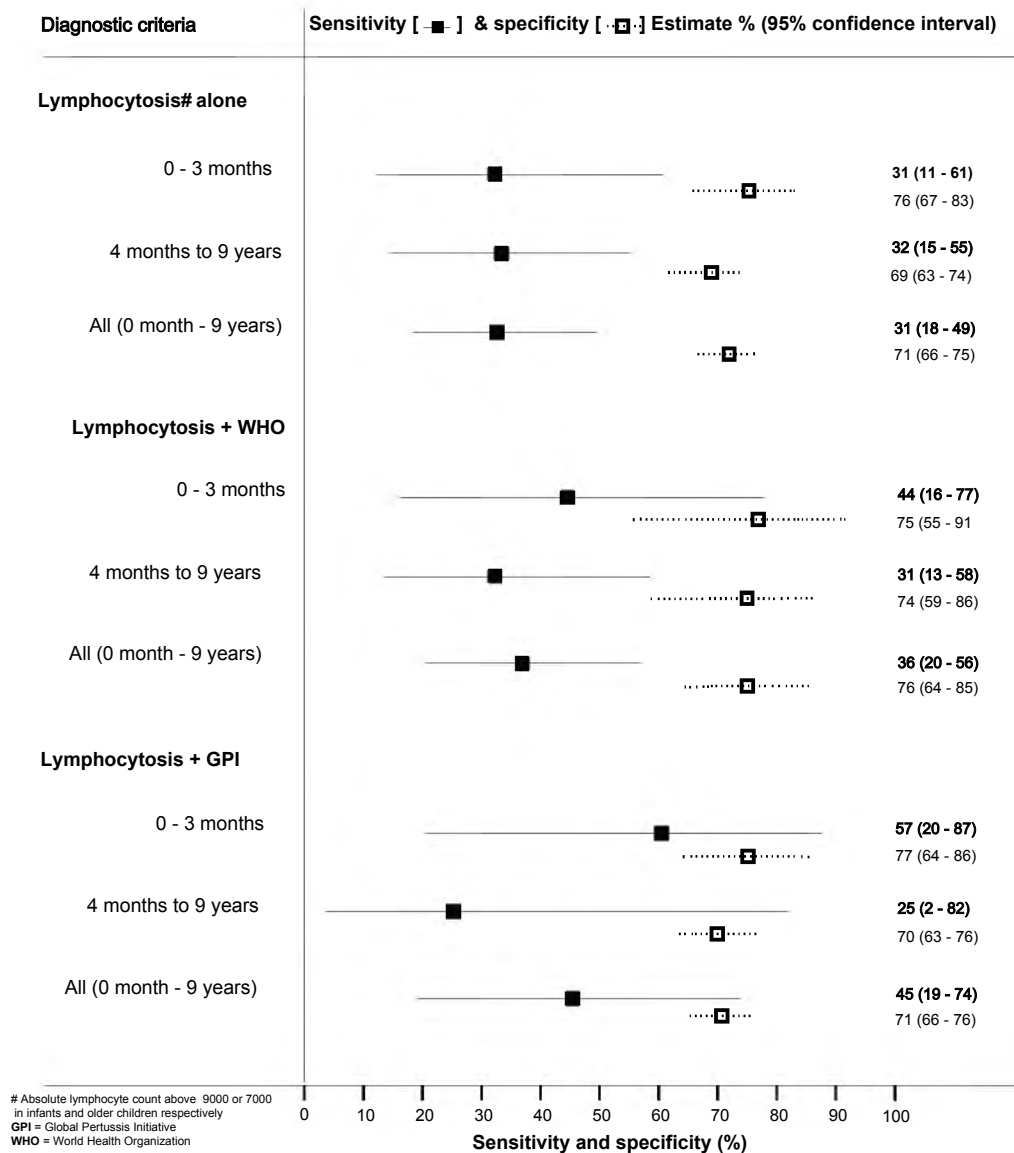


234

235 **Figure 3. Sensitivity and specificity of clinical features in the diagnosis of pertussis with**  
 236 **changing duration**

237

238 Lymphocytosis when used alone had a sensitivity of 31.3% (95% CI 17.5 - 49.3%)  
 239 and a specificity of 70.7% (95% CI .66.1-74.8%) compared to PCR. The sensitivity  
 240 and specificity when lymphocytosis was combined with WHO clinical criteria were  
 241 36.0% (95% CI 19.6 - 56.4%) and 75.6% (95% CI 63.7- 84.8%) for the whole group,  
 242 respectively; while combining GPI criteria with lymphocytosis gave sensitivity and  
 243 specificity of 45.5% (95% CI 19.2 - 74.5%) and 71.4% (95% CI 65.7- 76.4%),  
 244 respectively. Age stratified sensitivity and specificity of lymphocytosis when  
 245 combined with WHO and GPI criteria is shown in Figure 4.



246

247 **Figure 4. Sensitivity and specificity of lymphocytosis in the diagnosis of pertussis**

248 **Discussion**

249

250 Pertussis remains difficult to diagnose clinically with certainty as demonstrated by  
251 low sensitivity and specificity using current clinical case definitions. Adding  
252 lymphocytosis had a marginal impact in improving the diagnosis of pertussis in cases  
253 preselected with the use of WHO and GPI clinical criteria. In addition, the low  
254 sensitivity was across age groups.

255

256 The overall sensitivity and specificity of clinical features were generally low  
257 irrespective of whether WHO or GPI diagnostic criteria were used. Criteria  
258 recommended by WHO showed better sensitivity than those suggested by the GPI  
259 when duration of symptoms was not considered, but the latter showed better  
260 specificity. Paroxysmal cough and post-tussive vomiting as standalone clinical  
261 features, gave the best sensitivity for both sets of criteria. The highest likelihood ratios  
262 of just above five and four for WHO and GPI based criteria, respectively, are too low  
263 to make for a functional diagnostic tool for clinical practice.

264

265 A systematic review conducted on the use of symptoms in the diagnosis of pertussis  
266 concluded that the presence of whooping or post-tussive vomiting could be used to  
267 make a possible diagnosis of pertussis in adults while the absence of paroxysmal  
268 cough would possibly exclude it.[13] This study concluded that post-tussive vomiting  
269 was less helpful as a clinical diagnostic test in children. However, when Cornia *et al*  
270 analysed the likelihood ratios of clinical features used in the same systematic review,  
271 they found all positive likelihood ratios to be less than 2, significantly lower than a  
272 threshold regarded robust enough for clinical use.[14] A similar likelihood was  
273 observed when data from other systematic reviews on sensitivity of clinical signs in

274 the diagnosis of pertussis were analysed.[15, 16]

275

276 In our study, when duration was added to clinical features, GPI criteria had overall  
277 better diagnostic accuracy compared to WHO as indicated by the higher AUC (0.72  
278 versus 0.58). For both criteria, duration based diagnostic accuracy was better in young  
279 infants than in older infants and children (AUC 0.71 vs. 0.51 and AUC 0.74 vs. 0.68  
280 for WHO and GPI, respectively). Increase in the duration of symptoms reduced the  
281 sensitivity of clinical diagnosis in both sets of criteria, while the opposite was noted  
282 with respect to specificity. The best combinations of sensitivity and specificity (60%  
283 to 70% for both sets of criteria) were seen between five- and seven-days duration of  
284 symptoms. This suggests that suspected cases of pertussis are more likely to be  
285 correctly classified as positive or negative in children with this symptom duration.  
286 However, early diagnosis is desirable for effective treatment and to prevent  
287 transmission

288

289 An Iranian study reported 95% sensitivity and 15% specificity using a 14 day cut-off  
290 with at least one WHO clinical criterion in a cohort of children and adolescents 6 to  
291 14 years of age.[17] Duration of symptoms equal to or longer than 14 days gave a  
292 specificity of 63% and sensitivity of 93% in outbreak settings in one American  
293 study.[18] A recently published Serbian study testing diagnostic of GPI criteria in  
294 individuals older than 3 months reported sensitivity ranging between 5% and 76% in  
295 the 4 months to 9 year old group and between 2% and 73% in the older group; while  
296 for both groups specificity ranged between 50% and 100%.[19] For each clinical  
297 feature evaluated, there was an inverse relationship between sensitivity and  
298 specificity. All the studies mentioned here seem to have selected participants on the

299 bases of clinical criteria some of which were later tested for their sensitivity, which  
300 may explain the observed high sensitivity in some.

301

302 Adding lymphocytosis to our analysis marginally improved the diagnostic sensitivity  
303 of suspected cases screened with either criteria but showed a specificity higher than  
304 70% for both. The increase in sensitivity was higher in younger infants than in older  
305 children for both WHO and GPI when lymphocytosis was added to the criteria. This  
306 suggests that although lymphocytosis may be less useful in confirming the diagnosis  
307 of pertussis, when used age stratification should be considered. Very high lymphocyte  
308 counts have been shown to predict the severity and likelihood of dying in infants with  
309 pertussis; and therefore, should best be utilized for this role in the management of  
310 pertussis rather than diagnosis.[10, 20]

311

312 The difficulty involved in the diagnosis of pertussis has major implications for clinical  
313 management, infection control, surveillance and the conduct of pertussis vaccine  
314 trials. Missed diagnoses of pertussis due to low sensitivity affects both appropriate  
315 clinical intervention in the index patient and contacts as well as appropriate reporting  
316 and surveillance. In addition, low sensitivity undermines optimizing of preventive  
317 measures including immunisation. On the other hand, over diagnosis of pertussis may  
318 lead to overtreatment and inappropriate use of resources. Overall, diagnostic  
319 shortcomings have serious economic implications, particularly in poor resourced  
320 settings. Clinical and surveillance practice favours higher sensitivity at the expense of  
321 specificity, but low specificity has a huge impact on the estimated efficacy of  
322 pertussis vaccines.[6] There may be a need to develop context specific definitions of  
323 pertussis rather than attempting to come with one for all settings.

324 Our study was limited by a small sample size as well as the use of a single laboratory  
325 confirmation method performed at a single point in the course of the illness. As the  
326 diagnostic sensitivity of PCR is not constant throughout the course of illness, a  
327 negative result at a single point does not necessarily exclude infection with *B.*  
328 *pertussis*. [9, 21] We were also unable to assess the impact of HIV on clinical criteria  
329 as the sample size was not sufficient to make such an analysis. In addition, as our  
330 study population consisted of children with severe disease requiring hospitalisation,  
331 these findings may not be generalisable to children with less severe disease.  
332

333 While acknowledging the observed poor diagnostic accuracy of clinical criteria, the  
334 slight improvement observed with use of GPI criteria should encourage development  
335 of screening criteria. Screening with a high sensitivity (but acceptably low specificity)  
336 triage algorithm before laboratory testing would potentially reduce the waste of  
337 testing patients that are likely to return a negative result, while increasing the  
338 sensitivity of confirmatory PCR. Finding such screening criteria will require well-  
339 designed, prospective studies specifically investigating clinical diagnosis of pertussis.  
340 Such studies should ideally employ different laboratory diagnostic methods with  
341 testing at multiple periods in the course of the illness and include appropriate controls  
342 to allow estimation of specificity. A majority of published studies exploring  
343 sensitivity and specificity of pertussis clinical diagnosis are done in participants  
344 included on clinical suspicion of pertussis. Involving only suspected cases of pertussis  
345 to assess diagnostic accuracy of the same features on which the sample was selected  
346 has the potential of exaggerating the diagnostic accuracy of clinical criteria. [22]  
347  
348

## 349 **Conclusions**

350 Ultimately, in the absence of laboratory confirmation, confident diagnosis of  
351 pertussis on clinical grounds is difficult even for experienced physicians,  
352 especially when cases do not have the classical presentation. In our study, only 9%  
353 of confirmed cases were suspected to have pertussis, substantially underestimating  
354 pertussis as a possible cause of severe respiratory illness in our cohort. There is no  
355 obvious substitute for pertussis laboratory confirmation, and more effort is needed  
356 to increase this resource in LMIC settings where most pertussis is speculated to  
357 occur.[3, 23] In the current presence of limited resources, it would seem prudent to  
358 consider using modified case definitions, such as the one suggested by the GPI.[24] It  
359 is clear that longer durations of symptoms in a number of criteria used all over the  
360 world - including the ones suggested by WHO and the Centre for Disease control -  
361 greatly undermine sensitivity.[5, 25] Due consideration must be given to abandon these  
362 in favour of shorter durations of five to seven days used in conjunction with age-  
363 stratified criteria, even if this is at the expense of over-diagnosing pertussis.

364

## 365 **Acknowledgements**

366 We would like to acknowledge the participants, laboratory personnel and study  
367 staff for their immense contribution.

368

## 369 **References**

370

- 371 1. Cherry JD. Pertussis: challenges today and for the future. *PLoS pathogens*.  
372 2013;9(7):e1003418. Epub 2013/08/13. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003418.
- 373 2. Clark TA. Changing pertussis epidemiology: everything old is new again. *J Infect Dis*.  
374 2014;209(7):978-81. Epub 2014/03/15. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiu001.
- 375 3. Crowcroft NS, Stein C, Duclos P, Birmingham M. How best to estimate the global burden  
376 of pertussis? *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2003;3(7):413-8. Epub 2003/07/03.
- 377 4. Cherry JD, Tan T, Wirsing von Konig CH, Forsyth KD, Thisyakorn U, Greenberg D, et  
378 al. Clinical definitions of pertussis: Summary of a Global Pertussis Initiative roundtable  
379 meeting, February 2011. *Clinical infectious diseases*: 2012;54(12):1756-64.
- 380 5. World Health Organisation. WHO-recommended surveillance standard of pertussis [11



- 381 July 2019)]. Available from:  
382 [http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring\\_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance\\_type](http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance_type)  
383 [/passive/pertussis\\_standards/en/](http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/burden/vpd/surveillance_type/passive/pertussis_standards/en/).
- 384 6. World Health Organisation. WHO meeting on case definition of pertussis, Geneva, 10-11  
385 January 1991 [3 July 2019)]. Available from:  
386 <https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/66921>.
  - 387 7. Fry NK, Tzivra O, Li YT, McNiff A, Doshi N, Maple PA, et al. Laboratory diagnosis of  
388 pertussis infections: the role of PCR and serology. *J Med Microbiol.* 2004;53(Pt 6):519-  
389 25. Epub 2004/05/20.
  - 390 8. Riffelmann M, Wirsing von Konig CH, Caro V, Guiso N. Nucleic Acid amplification  
391 tests for diagnosis of Bordetella infections. *J Clin Microbiol.* 2005;43(10):4925-9.
  - 392 9. Wood N, McIntyre P. Pertussis: review of epidemiology, diagnosis, management and  
393 prevention. *Paediatr Respir Rev.* 2008;9(3):201-11; quiz 11-2.
  - 394 10. Carbonetti NH. Pertussis leukocytosis: mechanisms, clinical relevance and treatment.  
395 *Pathogens and disease.* 2016;74(7). Epub 2016/09/10. doi: 10.1093/femspd/ftw087.
  - 396 11. Levene I, Wacogne I. Question 3. Is measurement of the lymphocyte count useful in the  
397 investigation of suspected pertussis in infants? *Archives of disease in childhood.*  
398 2011;96(12):1203-5. Epub 2011/11/15. doi: 10.1136/archdischild-2011-300901.
  - 399 12. Muloiwa R, Dube FS, Nicol MP, Zar HJ, Hussey GD. Incidence and Diagnosis of  
400 Pertussis in South African Children Hospitalized With Lower Respiratory Tract Infection.  
401 *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* 2016;35(6):611-6.
  - 402 13. Moore A, Ashdown HF, Shinkins B, Roberts NW, Grant CC, Lasserson DS, et al.  
403 Clinical Characteristics of Pertussis-Associated Cough in Adults and Children: A  
404 Diagnostic Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Chest.* 2017;152(2):353-67.
  - 405 14. Cornia PB, Lipsky BA. Symptoms Associated With Pertussis Are Insufficient to Rule In  
406 or Rule Out the Diagnosis. *Chest.* 2019;155(2):449-50.
  - 407 15. Ebell MH, Marchello C, Callahan M. Clinical Diagnosis of Bordetella Pertussis Infection:  
408 A Systematic Review. *Journal of the American Board of Family Medicine : JABFM.*  
409 2017;30(3):308-19. Epub 2017/05/10. doi: 10.3122/jabfm.2017.03.160330.
  - 410 16. Cornia PB, Hersh AL, Lipsky BA, Newman TB, Gonzales R. Does this coughing  
411 adolescent or adult patient have pertussis? *JAMA.* 2010;304(8):890-6.
  - 412 17. Ghanaie RM, Karimi A, Sadeghi H, Esteghamti A, Falah F, Armin S, et al. Sensitivity  
413 and specificity of the World Health Organization pertussis clinical case definition.  
414 *International journal of infectious diseases : IJID.* 2010;14(12):e1072-5.
  - 415 18. Patriarca PA, Biellik RJ, Sanden G, Burstyn DG, Mitchell PD, Silverman PR, et al.  
416 Sensitivity and specificity of clinical case definitions for pertussis. *Am J Public Health.*  
417 1988;78(7):833-6. Epub 1988/07/01.
  - 418 19. Ristic M, Radosavljevic B, Stojanovic VD, Dilas M, Petrovic V. Performance of the new  
419 clinical case definitions of pertussis in pertussis suspected infection and other diagnoses  
420 similar to pertussis. *PLoS One.* 2018;13(9):e0204103. Epub 2018/09/21. doi:  
421 10.1371/journal.pone.0204103.
  - 422 20. Pierce C, Klein N, Peters M. Is leukocytosis a predictor of mortality in severe pertussis  
423 infection? *Intensive Care Med.* 2000;26(10):1512-4.
  - 424 21. Cherry JD, Grimprel E, Guiso N, Heininger U, Mertsola J. Defining pertussis  
425 epidemiology: clinical, microbiologic and serologic perspectives. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.*  
426 2005;24(5 Suppl):S25-34. Epub 2005/05/07.
  - 427 22. Gopal Krishnan S, Fun WH, Ramadras MD, Yunus R, Lye YF, Sararaks S. Pertussis  
428 clinical case definition: Time for change in developing countries? *PLoS One.*  
429 2019;14(7):e0219534. Epub 2019/07/11. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0219534.
  - 430 23. World Health Organisation. Managing pertussis outbreaks during humanitarian  
431 emergencies. Geneva: World Health Organisation, 2008.
  - 432 24. Muloiwa R, Wolter N, Mupere E, Tan T, Chitkara AJ, Forsyth KD, et al. Pertussis in  
433 Africa: Findings and recommendations of the Global Pertussis Initiative (GPI). *Vaccine.*  
434 2018;36(18):2385-93.
  - 435 25. Centers for Disease Control. Pertussis / Whooping Cough (*Bordetella pertussis*) 2020  
436 Case Definition 2020 [29 November 2020]. Available from:  
437 <https://www.cdc.gov/nndss/conditions/pertussis/case-definition/2020/>.
  - 438

# Chapter 7

## 1 **Highlights and Conclusions**

2

3 The thesis aimed to explore the full spectrum of pertussis in children who require  
4 hospitalisation for lower respiratory tract infection (LRTI). This included descriptions  
5 of prevalence, risk factors, clinical presentation, and to describe other organism  
6 associated with pertussis. I have used primary data supported by a comprehensive  
7 literature review - both structured as part of each chapter and formally as a systematic  
8 review - to come to some unambiguous conclusions about the burden of pertussis as  
9 seen in this group of children with severe illness.

10 The systematic review highlights the high mortality and case fatality rate in infants  
11 secondary to persistently high prevalence of pertussis in low and middle-income  
12 countries (LMIC). In addition, the systematic review is able, for the first time to  
13 provide consolidated evidence showing that both HIV exposed but uninfected  
14 children and HIV infected individuals are at a higher risk of acquiring pertussis and  
15 having worse outcomes. This is an important finding especially for countries in Sub-  
16 Saharan Africa, that carry the greatest burden of HIV.

17 Data from the systematic review is supported by the primary data that show that  
18 pertussis is quite common in South African children hospitalised with LRTI.  
19 Almost 10% of children had laboratory confirmed pertussis. The data suggests that  
20 one of the reasons for severity of disease, such that hospitalisation is required,  
21 may very well be the significant association between pertussis and bacteria and  
22 viruses that tend to cause interstitial pneumonia - a condition that is known to  
23 typically lead to hypoxaemia.

24 A worrying finding was that more than 90% of children with confirmed pertussis were

25 not clinically recognised by the attending clinicians. This should not be too surprising  
26 as this thesis shows the futility of using clinical features to confidently diagnose  
27 pertussis. Part of the aim of this study was to try find features that would improve  
28 clinical diagnosis of pertussis. It becomes however, the conclusion of this thesis,  
29 that there is currently no obvious substitute for pertussis laboratory confirmation in  
30 non-outbreak settings.

31

32 This highlights the need for laboratory support for confirming pertussis. The findings  
33 in this thesis show that laboratory confirmation can be further enhanced by testing an  
34 induced sputum in addition to a nasopharyngeal specimen; a novel finding of the  
35 thesis. Both the primary study and the systematic review concur that the only  
36 useful test in this instance is polymerase chain reaction (PCR) as culture, the  
37 supposed diagnostic gold standard, and serology, do not have the requisite  
38 sensitivity and convenience to be of practical value.

39 In addition to confirming the increased risk of pertussis in children exposed to HIV *in*  
40 *utero* and in children with HIV infection – a finding that was novel at the time – the  
41 primary data of the thesis also shows poor nutritional status as a major risk. Detection  
42 of *Bordetella pertussis* in nasopharyngeal specimens of mothers, was independently  
43 associated with a more than 10-fold increased risk of pertussis in their children. The  
44 thesis also confirms incomplete primary vaccination and early infancy as important  
45 risk factors for pertussis.

46

47 Both the primary study and the systematic review indicate an urgent need to  
48 strengthen immunisation programs to prioritise vaccination of pregnant women,  
49 particularly those who are HIV infected.

50 In conclusion, I would like to list the recommendations of the Global Pertussis  
51 Initiative (GPI) for the African continent.[1] I got involved with the GPI as a result  
52 of this doctoral project. These recommendations mirror the conclusions and  
53 recommendations of this thesis. Table 1.  
54

**Table 1. Summary of GPI recommendations for African countries**

- 
- Public health and laboratory-confirmed pertussis surveillance should be improved both at regional and national levels to better understand the pertussis burden and to help healthcare authorities and policy makers make informed decisions.
  - More research on pertussis aetiology, disease pattern and vaccine development is needed to prevent pertussis.
  - Pertussis vaccination coverage should be improved through education and better outreach programs in rural areas.
  - Based on the available resources, infants and toddlers should be prioritized for vaccination followed by pregnant women and other risk groups.
  - Better disease and treatment awareness should be advocated to help prevent pertussis.
- 

From Muloiwa et al. *Pertussis in Africa: Findings and recommendations of the Global Pertussis Initiative (GPI)*[1]

55  
56 Seventy-five years after the introduction of effective vaccination against pertussis  
57 as a public health strategy, pertussis is still with us and causing severe disease.  
58 This thesis does more than just highlight the problem, pointing also to some  
59 potential targets for public health policy to prioritise in order to reduce the disease  
60 burden of pertussis.

61

62

## References

63

- 64 1. Muloiwa R, Wolter N, Mupere E, Tan T, Chitkara AJ, Forsyth KD, et al.  
65 Pertussis in Africa: Findings and recommendations of the Global Pertussis  
66 Initiative (GPI). *Vaccine*. 2018;36(18):2385-93. Epub 2018/04/01. doi:  
67 10.1016/j.vaccine.2018.03.025.

68



## ***Informed Consent form for parents and guardians***

### ***Pertussis in children hospitalised with Lower Respiratory Tract Infection***

You and your child are invited to participate in a study on an illness called pertussis (whooping cough).

Whooping cough is common in children but may also occur in adults. It is caused by a germ. This infection may cause the child to have a severe cough. A vaccine (immunization) is available to prevent this infection, and your child may have been given some or all of the doses of the vaccine at the clinic,

The aim of this study is to understand why some children get pertussis and to develop better ways of diagnosing this infection.

All children admitted into our ward (S11) with a chest infection can participate in this study. You and your child may choose to participate or not. This will not affect the care that you or your child receives. Your child will have all the usual tests for a chest infection including, a chest x-ray, blood culture, HIV test (if the result is not yet known), and sputum tests for tuberculosis (TB) if they are needed, Your child will receive usual care whether or not you choose to participate in this study.

#### **Study investigations**

You and your child will have extra tests done to look for the cause of the chest infection. These are:

- Two samples of mucus from the nose will be taken as well as a mucus sample from the chest. These will be sent to the laboratory to be tested for pertussis as well as for other infections that may cause cough and chest infection.
- A small amount of blood (about a teaspoon full) will be taken from your child to store for new tests in the future to diagnose this infection.
- You as the caregiver will have a sample of mucus taken from your nose. This will be sent to the laboratory and stored to test for pertussis, (if your child's specimen is found to have pertussis).
- After two weeks, you will be contacted over the phone to see how your child and other household members are doing.

#### **Side Effects and Risks**

The cotton wool swabbing is a bit uncomfortable but it is not dangerous.

## **Benefits**

If you and your child participate in this research, your child will have the benefit of extra tests to look for the cause of cough and chest infection. This may improve treatment as it may indicate a specific treatment to be used. Should your child have pertussis other family members in the family will be offered treatment to protect them against this infection.

## **Reimbursements**

The research will not cost you anything. You will not be given any money or gifts to take part in this research.

## **Confidentiality**

The information that we collect from this research project will be kept confidential. Any study information about you and your child will have a number on it instead of a name. Only the researchers will know what you and your child's number is.

## **Who to Contact**

If you have any questions you may ask them now or later, even after the study has started. If you wish to ask questions later, you may contact any of the study staff or

Dr Rudzani Muloiwa  
Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital  
Klipfontein Road  
Rondebosch, 7700  
Tel: 021 658 5111/5445E-mail: Rudzani.muloiwa@uct.ac.za

***This proposal has been reviewed and approved by the Human Research Ethics Committee of the University of Cape Town, which is a committee whose task it is to make sure that research participants are protected from harm. If you wish to find about more about the ethics committee, contact***

## **Mrs Lamees Emjedi**

Research Ethics Committee  
E 52 Room 24, Old Main Building, Groote Schuur Hospital, Observatory  
Telephone: +27 21 406 6338  
Fax: 27 21 406 6411  
Email: nosi.tsama@uct.ac.za and shuretta.thomas@uct.ac.za

**PART II: Certificate of Consent**

**Storage of samples**

If any of the blood or mucus samples my child has provided for this research project is unused or leftover when the project is completed

- I give my permission for my child's samples to be stored and used in future research of any type which has been properly approved
- I give permission for my child's samples to be stored and used in future research but only for research on Pertussis.
- I give permission for my child's samples to be stored and used in future research except for research about \_\_\_\_\_.

**OR**  I wish my child's samples to be destroyed immediately.

**AND**

- I want my child's identity to be removed from my child's samples.
- I want my child's identity to be kept with my child's samples.

I have read the foregoing information, or it has been read to me. I have had the opportunity to ask questions about it and any questions that I have asked have been answered to my satisfaction. I consent voluntarily for my child and myself to participate in this research.

Print Name of Parent/Guardian \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Parent/Guardian \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Day/month/year

**If illiterate**

A literate witness must sign (if possible, this person should be selected by the Parent/Guardian and should have no connection to the research team). Parents/Guardians who are illiterate should include their thumb-print as well.

I have witnessed the accurate reading of the consent form to the potential participant, and the individual has had the opportunity to ask questions. I confirm that the individual has given consent freely.

Print name of witness \_\_\_\_\_ AND Thumbprint of Parent/Guardian

Signature of witness \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Day/month/year



**Statement by the researcher/person taking consent**

I have accurately read out the information sheet to the potential participant, and to the best of my ability made sure that the participant understands that the following will be done:

1. Nasopharyngeal swabs will be done on the child and on the caregiver.
2. An induced sputum will be collected from the child.
3. Specimens will be analysed for Bordetella pertussis and other respiratory tract infections.
4. Samples may be stored for possible future analysis.

I confirm that the Parent/Guardian was given an opportunity to ask questions about the study, and all the questions asked by the Parent/Guardian have been answered correctly and to the best of my ability. I confirm that the Parent/Guardian has not been coerced into giving consent, and the consent has been given freely and voluntarily.

A copy of this information and consent form has been provided to the Parent/Guardian.

Name of Researcher/person taking the consent \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Researcher/person taking the consent \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_  
Day/month/year















## 2. RTHC / Vaccination History

Pertussis study number: \_\_\_\_\_: \_\_\_\_\_

1.	Does the child have a road to health card available?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes ( <i>Skip to 2</i> )	<input type="checkbox"/> No
1.1	If <i>No</i> , Has the child ever received any vaccines other than the vaccines <i>he or she</i> received at birth?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown

**Copy the following information from the card, if no RTHC available, ask person completing interview**

2.	Date of Birth (dd/mm/yy)	___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
2.1	If DOB unknown, enter age in months:	_____	
3.	Is the child failing to thrive/crossing centiles	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Unsure
4.	Birth weight	___ . ___ kg	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
5.	Gestational age	___ weeks	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
5.1	If gestational age unknown	<input type="checkbox"/> Term <input type="checkbox"/> Premature (<37 weeks)	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown

**If the RTHC is available, please complete**

**No RTHC available**

6.	Vaccine	Date given (dd/mm/yyyy)	
6.1	BCG	___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
6.2	OPV	0 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		1 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		2 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		3 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		4 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
6.3	PENTAXIM LOCATION GIVEN -	<i>(i.e. Health facility where the child received vaccine)</i>	
6.3	OR	1 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		2 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		3 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		4 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
	DTP/HIB	1 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		2 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		3 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		4 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
6.4	PCV <input type="checkbox"/> 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 13 <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown	1 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		2 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		3 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
6.5	ROTAVIRUS	1 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		2 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
6.6	MEASLES	1 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		2 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
7.	INFLUENZA	1 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
		2 ___ / ___ / 20__	<input type="checkbox"/> Not given
8.	OTHER: _____	___ / ___ / 20__	
9.	Did the child have any of the following within 6 weeks before or after any of the vaccines in 6.3?  If yes, which vaccines? Enter 1- 4	<input type="checkbox"/> Steroid use	<input type="checkbox"/> Measles
		<input type="checkbox"/> Immunoglobulin therapy	<input type="checkbox"/> None
		<input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.	Has the child received Vitamin A in the previous six months?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown

Staff initials: \_\_\_\_\_

Date completed: \_\_\_ / \_\_\_ / 20\_\_

### 3. Medical Records

The following questions relate to the current admission. Information should be obtained from clinical records or measured (e.g. weight and temperature) if not available in records. Temperature, heart rate and respiratory rate should be the maximum recorded within 24 hours of admission

Pertussis study number: \_\_\_\_\_: \_\_\_\_\_

1.	Sex	<input type="checkbox"/> Male <input type="checkbox"/> Female
2.	Date of admission	____ / ____ / 20 ____ (dd/mm/yyyy)
3.	Time of admission	____ : ____ <input type="checkbox"/> Am <input type="checkbox"/> Pm <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
4.	Race	<input type="checkbox"/> Asian/Indian <input type="checkbox"/> Black <input type="checkbox"/> White <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured
5.	Admission height/length	____ , ____ cm
6.	Admission weight	____ . ____ kg
7.	Mid upper arm circumference (MUAC)	____ , ____ cm
8.	Head Circumference	____ , ____ cm
9.	Temperature	____ . ____ °C
10.	Heart rate	____ beats / min <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
11.	Respiratory rate	____ breaths / min <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
12.	Oxygen saturation	____ % <input type="checkbox"/> Room air <input type="checkbox"/> On oxygen <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
13.	Presence of oedema	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
14.	Did the child receive any of: Bronchodilators Antibiotics If Yes, name(s) of antibiotic(s)	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No _____
15.	HIV Stage of the child	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable

16.	Lower chest wall indrawing:	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
17.	Crackles/crepitations	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
18.	Wheezing	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
19.	Clubbing	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded

**Outcome Summary** – to be obtained on all participants when discharged.

20.	Did child receive supplemental oxygen	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
21.	Admission to a High Care unit or ICU	<input type="checkbox"/> ICU <input type="checkbox"/> High Care <input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
	If admitted to above, number of days	ICU days: ____ High Care days: ____ <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
22.	Assisted ventilation	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
	If Yes, Duration	____ days <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
	Type of support	<input type="checkbox"/> CPAP <input type="checkbox"/> IPPV
	Number of days	____ days <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded
23.	Outcome of child	<input type="checkbox"/> Discharged <input type="checkbox"/> Refused Hospital Treatment (RHT) <input type="checkbox"/> Died <input type="checkbox"/> Transferred to another hospital
24.	Date of discharge/ death/ transfer/RHT	____ / ____ / 20 ____ (dd/mm/yyyy)
25.	If discharged, on what treatment was child discharged? (mark all that apply)	<input type="checkbox"/> Antibiotics, specify: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Bronchodilators <input type="checkbox"/> Inhaled steroids <input type="checkbox"/> Anti TB treatment <input type="checkbox"/> Other, specify _____
26.	Discharge diagnosis (mark all that apply)	<input type="checkbox"/> Bronchopneumonia <input type="checkbox"/> Bronchiolitis <input type="checkbox"/> Lobar Pneumonia <input type="checkbox"/> Tuberculosis <input type="checkbox"/> Pertussis <input type="checkbox"/> Pneumocystis pneumonia <input type="checkbox"/> Chronic lung disease <input type="checkbox"/> Sepsis <input type="checkbox"/> Underweight/Kwashiorkor/Marasmus <input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded <input type="checkbox"/> Other, specify _____

Staff initials: \_\_\_\_\_

Date completed: \_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_ / 20 \_\_\_\_



#### 4. Care-Giver Information

Pertussis study number: \_\_\_\_\_: \_\_\_\_\_

1.	Sex	<input type="checkbox"/> Male <input type="checkbox"/> Female
2.	Date of birth	____ / ____ / 19 ____ (dd/mm/yyyy)
3.	What is your relationship to child	<input type="checkbox"/> Mother <input type="checkbox"/> Father <input type="checkbox"/> Grandparent <input type="checkbox"/> Other relative <input type="checkbox"/> Caregiver <input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____
4.	Race	<input type="checkbox"/> Asian/Indian <input type="checkbox"/> Black <input type="checkbox"/> White <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured
5.	Do you sleep in the same room as child?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
6.	Do you smoke? If Yes, do you smoke inside the house?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No (skip to next question if No) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
Did you experience any of these symptoms before or during the course of the child's illness?		
7.	Fever?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
8.	Wheezing?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
9.	Runny or congested nose?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.	Cough?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown (skip to 11 if No or Unknown)
	If Yes, duration?	_____ days _____ weeks _____ months <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.1	Night time cough	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.2	Paroxysms of cough	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.3	Whooping cough	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.4	Vomiting after cough	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.5	Barking cough	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.6	Normal state between cough	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
10.7	Did you receive any of the following: Bronchodilators Antibiotics If Yes, Name of antibiotic	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No _____
11.	Have you ever been diagnosed with one of the following chronic medical conditions?	<input type="checkbox"/> TB Disease: If yes: <input type="checkbox"/> On treatment <input type="checkbox"/> Completed <input type="checkbox"/> Defaulted <input type="checkbox"/> Asthma <input type="checkbox"/> Other lung problems <input type="checkbox"/> Pertussis/Whooping cough <input type="checkbox"/> Heart problems <input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Other, Specify _____
12.	Have you ever had an HIV test?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No (skip to end if No)
13.	If Yes, what was the result of the latest test?	<input type="checkbox"/> Positive <input type="checkbox"/> Negative (skip to end if Negative)
14.	Are you currently receiving Antiretroviral Therapy (ART)?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No (skip to 14.2 if No)
14.1	If Yes, how long have you received it?	_____ months
14.2	Most recent CD4 count Date ____ / ____ / 20 ____	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
14.3	Most recent viral load Date ____ / ____ / 20 ____	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown

Staff initials: \_\_\_\_\_

Date completed: \_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_ / 20 \_\_\_\_

## 5. Investigations & Results Form

Pertussis study number: \_\_\_\_\_ : \_\_\_\_\_

### Questions 1 and 2 to be completed for all participants

<b>1.</b>	<b>HIV testing</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Not done (skip to 2)		
	<u>Test</u>	<u>Date of test</u>	<u>Result</u>
1.1	<input type="checkbox"/> ELISA – child	___ / ___ / 20 ___	<input type="checkbox"/> Reactive <input type="checkbox"/> Non reactive
1.2	<input type="checkbox"/> ELISA - mother	___ / ___ / 20 ___	<input type="checkbox"/> Reactive <input type="checkbox"/> Non reactive
1.3	<input type="checkbox"/> PCR - child	___ / ___ / 20 ___	<input type="checkbox"/> Positive <input type="checkbox"/> Negative
1.4	<input type="checkbox"/> Most recent CD4 count - child	___ / ___ / 20 ___	_____ Absolute CD4 _____ % of lymphocytes
1.5	<input type="checkbox"/> Most recent viral load - child:	___ / ___ / 20 ___	_____ copies/ml <input type="checkbox"/> >750 000
<b>2.</b>	<b>Micro/Virology results</b> - Obtained in the first 48 hours of admission <input type="checkbox"/> Not done (skip to 3)		
	Lab number	Date of test	Site
2.1		___ / ___ / 20 ___	
2.2		___ / ___ / 20 ___	
2.3		___ / ___ / 20 ___	
2.4		___ / ___ / 20 ___	

<b>3.</b>	<b>CRP (C-reactive protein)</b> (<72 hrs of admission) <input type="checkbox"/> Not done (skip to 4)		
	Date ___ / ___ / 20 ___	Time ___ : ___ <input type="checkbox"/> Am <input type="checkbox"/> Pm	Result _____ mg/l
	<input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded		
<b>3.1</b>	<b>Haematology</b>	<b>Result</b>	
3.1	Haemoglobin	_____	
3.2	Platelets	_____	
3.3	White cell count	_____ (Total)	
<b>4.</b>	<b>Differential count</b>	Lymphocytes	Absolute _____ Percentage _____
4.1		Neutrophils	Absolute _____ Percentage _____
4.2		Monocytes	Absolute _____ Percentage _____
4.3		Bands	Absolute _____ Percentage _____
4.4		Other	Absolute _____ Percentage _____
<b>5.</b>	<b>STUDY SPECIMENS TAKEN</b>	Date ___ / ___ / 20 ___	
		<input type="checkbox"/> NP Swab for culture	<input type="checkbox"/> NP Swab for PCR (Child)
		<input type="checkbox"/> Induced sputum	<input type="checkbox"/> NP Swab for PCR (Care-Giver)
<b>6.</b>	<b>TB Results</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Not done (skip to 6)		
	Date	Specimen	Result –AFB smear
6.1	___ / ___ / 20 ___	<input type="checkbox"/> Induced sputum	<input type="checkbox"/> Positive
		<input type="checkbox"/> Gastric Washings	<input type="checkbox"/> Negative
		<input type="checkbox"/> Not recorded	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes
			<input type="checkbox"/> No
<b>7.</b>	<b>Other</b> (skip to 8 if not done)		
	<u>Test</u>	<u>Date of test</u>	<u>Result</u>
7.1	<input type="checkbox"/> Albumin	___ / ___ / 20 ___	_____ . _____ g/dL
7.2	<input type="checkbox"/> Total protein	___ / ___ / 20 ___	_____ . _____ g/dL
7.3	<input type="checkbox"/> Chemistry	___ / ___ / 20 ___	Na _____ K _____ Urea _____ Creatine _____
<b>8.</b>	<b>Radiology</b>		
8.1	Date of chest x-ray	___ / ___ / 20 ___	
8.2	X-ray findings	<input type="checkbox"/> Normal	<input type="checkbox"/> Interstitial infiltrate
		<input type="checkbox"/> Pleural effusion	<input type="checkbox"/> Consolidation or air bronchograms
		<input type="checkbox"/> Cavitations	<input type="checkbox"/> Lobar consolidation
		<input type="checkbox"/> Sub-optimal quality	<input type="checkbox"/> Other _____

Staff initials: \_\_\_\_\_

Date completed: \_\_\_ / \_\_\_ / 20 \_\_\_